

330

ble in the Colloquial series:

Arabic
Arabic (Levantine)
Basque
Bulgarian
Cambodian
Cantonese
Chinese
Czech
Danish
Dutch
English
Estonian
French
German
* Greek
Gujarati
Hindi
Hungarian
Indonesian
Italian

Japanese
Korean
Latvian
Lithuanian
Malay
Norwegian
Panjabi
Persian
Polish
Portuguese
Romanian
* Russian
Serbo-Croat
Slovak
Slovene
Somali
* Spanish
Spanish of Latin America
Swedish
Thai
Turkish
Ukrainian
Vietnamese
Welsh

Accompanying cassette(s) are available for the above titles.

* Accompanying CDs are also available.

Colloquial Latvian

The Complete Course for Beginners

Christopher Moseley



London and New York

BIBLIOTECA GENERAL
UNIVERSIDAD POLITÉCNICA
VALENCIA

Contents

First published 1996
by Routledge
11 New Fetter Lane, London EC4P 4EE
Simultaneously published in the USA and Canada
by Routledge
29 West 35th Street, New York, NY 10001
© 1996 Christopher Moseley
Typeset in Times Ten by Florentype Ltd, Stoodleigh, Devon
Printed and bound in England by Clays Ltd, St Ives plc
Illustrations by Matthew Crabbe

The author asserts the moral right to be identified as the author of this work.

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reprinted or reproduced or utilized in any form or by any electronic, mechanical, or other means, now known or hereafter invented, including photocopying and recording, or in any information storage or retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publishers.

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data
A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library
Library of Congress Cataloguing in Publication Data
Moseley, Christopher.
Colloquial Latvian: a complete language course/Christopher Moseley.
(Colloquial series)

Includes bibliographical references and index.

1. Latvian language – Textbooks for foreign speakers – English.

I. Title.

PG8839.5.E5M67 1996

491'.9382421–dc20 95–44852

ISBN 0-415-11797-6 (book)

ISBN 0-415-11798-4 (cassettes)

ISBN 0-415-11799-2 (book and cassettes course)

Acknowledgements	vii
About this book	1
The sounds of Latvian	4
1 Rīgas lidostā At Riga airport	9
2 Pa ceļam uz Rīgu On the way to Riga	21
3 Mājās Rīgā At home in Riga	34
4 Rīgas veikalos Shopping in Riga	46
5 Lauku dzīve Country life	58
6 Dzimšanas diena A birthday	73
7 Līgo svētki Midsummer celebrations	84
8 Brauciens ar autobusu A bus journey	94
9 Dzīvokļi un mājas Flats and houses	103
10 Ārsta vizīte The doctor comes	113
11 Tirgus darījumi Business dealings	122

12 Sports	133
Sport	
13 Brauciens ar riteni	140
A bicycle trip	
14 Pusdienas	147
A dinner	
15 Brauciens gar krastu	153
A trip along the coast	
16 Mūzika un kultūra	163
Music and culture	
17 Latvijas masu informācijas līdzekļi	170
The Latvian mass media	
18 Jānis meklē savu senču saknes	179
Jānis seeks his family roots	
19 Ģimenes pēdējās dienas Latvijā	186
The family's last days in Latvia	
20 Atvadīšanās	192
Farewell	
Verb conjugations	198
Key to exercises	202
English-Latvian glossary	214
Latvian-English glossary	220
Glossary of grammatical terms	242
Index of language points	246

Acknowledgements

The patient help of many native Latvians has been vital to me in preparing this book, and I would like to record here my grateful thanks to at least some of them: to Reinis Mertens and Ivans Belevičs for their enthusiastic responses to even my most naive questions; and to Maija Brēde (and Klāvs Sedlenieks) for sound pedagogical advice. Paul Atyeo has provided vital insights from the point of view of the non-native learner; and Simon Bell at Routledge has nursed this project through from start to finish. Thanks go also to my wife, Kristina, for her forbearance while much midnight oil was burned.

I would like to dedicate this work to the memory of Māra Vīlčinskā, who sadly did not live to see the fruition of a project to which she gave warm and vital support in the early stages. I can only hope this book is worthy of the infectious enthusiasm and encouragement she gave it.

About this book

This course aims to provide a working knowledge of the contemporary Latvian language. Latvian is one of the two surviving members of the Baltic branch of the Indo-European family of languages. Its closest relative is Lithuanian, the language of Latvia's southern neighbour. The Baltic languages are of great antiquity and therefore of much interest to historians of Indo-European linguistics. At one time there may have been up to ten members of the Baltic branch, but little is known of them: the most recent language in this group to die out was Old Prussian, which was defunct by the end of the seventeenth century.

The Republic of Latvia re-emerged as a sovereign nation as recently as 1991; the three Baltic republics of Estonia, Latvia and Lithuania were the first to declare their independence from the Soviet Union. Like its northern and southern neighbours, Latvia had enjoyed a period of independence earlier this century, from 1918 to 1940, between the two world wars, a period which saw a rapid growth in the country's prosperity to a position to which it is only now returning. In previous centuries, Latvia was, with its northern neighbour Estonia, subsumed under the name of the Duchy of Livonia as part of the Russian empire, and before that under Swedish and Polish rule. In medieval times its territory was conquered and Christianized by the Teutonic Knights from Germany, and their descendants remained until the present century as the educated nobility of 'Livonia'.

All these tides of history are reflected in the present-day Latvian language. Embedded in the Baltic bedrock of the language one can find traces of German, Russian and even Swedish, which serve to give a more cosmopolitan character to this old-established tongue of peasants and seafarers. Even in the twentieth century the language has undergone considerable changes: as it shakes off the jargon of fifty years of 'Sovietese', it eagerly embraces the

international terminology of commerce, much of it recognizable to English-speakers.

During the Soviet period the Latvians almost became a minority in their own country, and in the capital, Riga, they were in fact so. Russian came to predominate in most areas of life, and for native Latvians bilingualism became an everyday fact of life. It is for this reason that, since independence, stringent laws have been passed and implemented in Latvia to ensure the primary position of Latvian as the state language of the country. In the last years of the Soviet era, real fears had been expressed that, if existing trends were to continue, the Latvian language would soon die out. Now the language is in a much healthier position. Owing to certain similarities between the structures of the Latvian and Russian languages, and a certain amount of common vocabulary, Latvian linguistic 'purism' has perhaps taken on a more vigilant edge than in, say, Estonia, whose language has no genetic affiliation with Russian. Incidentally, the only other language native to Latvia, Livonian, which is now on the point of extinction, is most closely related to Estonian.

After the collapse of Latvia's independence following the Molotov-Ribbentrop Pact of 1939 and the Soviet occupation of 1940, large numbers of Latvians were deported from or fled the country. Consequently, in the post-war years sizeable Latvian communities established themselves abroad, notably in Germany, Sweden, Canada, the United States, Australia and Britain. Throughout the subsequent decades these communities have proudly maintained their country's ancient language and traditions. Many of them are now enjoying the opportunity to revisit their ancestral homeland and re-establish ties with the approximately 2 million Latvians who remained there. Altogether, then, there are perhaps upwards of 3 million native speakers of Latvian in the world today.

Contact between the exile community and the homeland is a thread that runs through the twenty lessons given in this book. In getting to know the Latvian language and people, we follow the fortunes of a family returning to Latvia for the first time from the other side of the world after a whole generation apart. Most of the situations that a newcomer to Latvia will confront are therefore seen through the eyes of both the resident and the visitor, and it is hoped that this approach to the language will help to smooth the path for those who find the terrain unfamiliar at first. Once you try out your own colloquial Latvian, you are sure to find

your Latvian friends and acquaintances will offer lots of help and encouragement in mastering their beautiful and fascinating tongue.

The twenty lessons, then, form a consistent narrative, and are made up of dialogues, vocabulary lists, grammatical explanations, reading passages, 'Language in action' features and a wide variety of other exercises. The lessons are of course graded for difficulty, but the reading passages, which aim to give the reader a taste of the varieties of written Latvian, offer more of a challenge, to whet the learner's appetite for things to come.

If you have the accompanying recordings, you will find the recorded passages marked with a cassette symbol in the book. In using the tapes, don't be afraid to listen over again to anything you are not sure of until you are confident to proceed. Don't be afraid, either, to refer frequently to the Glossary at the end of the book, and the ready-reference tables to assist you with some of the more difficult points of grammar.

In writing this course I have consulted several authoritative dictionaries and textbooks, which I would like to mention here:

Dictionaries

- E. Turkina (1982), *Latviešu-Angļu vārdnīca*, Riga: Avots.
Z. Belzēja and others (1977), *English-Latvian Dictionary*, Waverly, Iowa: National Latvian Publishers.

Textbooks

- T. Budiņa Lazdiņa (1966), *Teach Yourself Latvian*, London: English Universities Press.
B. Ceplīte, L. Ceplītis (1991), *Latviešu valodas praktiskā gramatika*, Riga: Zvaigzne.
T. Fennell and H. Gelsen (1979), *A Grammar of Modern Latvian* (3 volumes), The Hague: Mouton.

The sounds of Latvian

The Latvian alphabet consists of thirty-five letters:

A	a	H	h	P	p
Ā	ā	I	i	R	r
B	b	Ī	ī	S	s
C	c	J	j	Š	š
Č	č	K	k	T	t
D	d	Ķ	ķ	Ū	u
Dz	dz	L	l	Ū	ū
E	e	Ļ	ļ	V	v
Ē	ē	M	m	Z	z
F	f	N	n	Ž	ž
G	g	Ņ	ņ		
Ģ	ģ	O	o		

The letters q, w, x and y are not used, even in writing foreign names. The digraphs **Dz, dz** (and **Dž, dž**) are treated as single letters in Latvian books.

Pronunciation

Latvian is pronounced as it is written, and once you learn the alphabet you will have a reliable idea of how each word is pronounced.

Vowels

There are six vowels in Latvian, and they can occur in both short and long forms. The long forms are indicated in writing by placing a macron (ˉ) above the letter.

a is pronounced like the 'u' in English 'but' (like *a* in most European languages). Example: **ala** 'cave'.

ā is pronounced as in English 'art'. Example: **ātri** 'quickly'.

e is pronounced in two different ways, like the 'e' in 'bed' or like the 'a' in 'cat', depending on the word in question. These are referred to as 'broad' (**platais**) and 'narrow' (**šaurais**) **e** respectively. Some rules for determining which way **e** is pronounced in a word will be given in a later lesson. In the vocabulary lists in the early lessons, 'broad' **e** will be left unmarked, and 'narrow' **e** will be indicated by a small hook underneath: **ē** (This follows the convention used by other Latvian grammarians.) Remember that this is *only a pronunciation guide*; it is not used in writing. Examples: **es ēsmu** 'I am', **tu esi** 'you are'.

ē the same applies to the longer version of **e**, and will be indicated as such in writing. Examples: **redzēt** 'see', **krēsls** 'chair'.

i is pronounced as in English 'bit', but a little further forward in the mouth with tenser lips: e.g. **sirds** 'heart'. Thus it is the short equivalent of **ī**.

ī sounds like the vowel in English 'beat'. Example: **sirdī** 'in the heart'.

o is also pronounced in two different ways. In words of older Latvian origin, this vowel is pronounced as a diphthong [uo], almost like the 'wa' in English 'wasp'; in more recent borrowings, it is a monophthong [o], pronounced as in English 'got'. Examples: (long) **ozols** 'oak', (short) **kino** 'cinema'.

u is pronounced as in English 'pull'. Example: **pulkstens** 'clock'.

ū, the longer version of **u**, is thus pronounced rather like the vowel in 'pool'. Example: **pūles** 'efforts'.

Diphthongs

Apart from the sound [uo] written as **o**, Latvian has a range of other diphthongs. Each one is written as it is pronounced, a combination of two vowels as follows:

ei	meita	'daughter'
ie	ieļa	'street'
ai	skaists	'beautiful'
au	laudis	'people'
ui	muita	'customs'

There are no other true diphthongs in native words; other vowel combinations are the result of adding a prefix to a root, such as *paēst* 'eat (one's fill)', *saiet* 'go together', *Saeima* 'Latvian Parliament'.

Consonants

b, d, f,
l, m, n,
s, v

and **z** are pronounced as in English.

j is pronounced like 'y' in 'yes': e.g. *jo* 'because'.

c is pronounced like 'ts'. Thus, for example, *cits* 'other' begins and ends with the same sound.

dz is the voiced version of 'c': e.g. *dzied* 'sings'.

The consonants that have accent marks are all what we might call 'palatalized' sounds, the result of adding a [j] sound to a consonant.

č is like the 'ch' in English 'church': e.g. *četri* 'four'.

dž is like the 'j' in English 'job': e.g. *dadži* 'thistles'.

š is like the 'sh' in English 'ship': e.g. *šis* 'this'.

ž is like the 's' in 'pleasure': e.g. *žurka* 'rat'.

ļ is like l + j, pronounced with the tongue arched further towards

the palate than with l (hence the name 'palatalized') to make a single sound, like the 'lj' in 'million': e.g. *ļoti* 'very'.

ņ is likewise a combination of n + j, as a single sound, like the

'ni' in English 'onion': e.g. *ņem!* 'take!'.

ķ is not like any sound in English, but most closely resembles the [tʃ] sound in 'Tuesday' or 'cut you': e.g. *ķer!* 'catch!'.

ģ is the voiced equivalent (produced with the vocal cords vibrating) of *ķ*, a bit like the [dʒ] sound in 'due': e.g. *ģimene* 'family'.

r is pronounced with a moderate trill (two or three flaps of the tongue): e.g. *redz* 'sees!'.

p, t and **k** are pronounced without the initial puff of air (aspiration) so often heard at the beginning of English words: e.g. *putns* 'bird', *kakis* 'cat', *tas* 'it'.

¹ Up to 1945 there was an additional letter in Latvian, *ŗ* (r + j), but this was abolished by the Soviet authorities, and there are no plans at present to restore it. It is still to be found in some Latvian books printed abroad, but in Latvia it is written and pronounced as *r*.

When they occur between two short vowels, unvoiced consonants such as **p, t** and **k** tend to be lengthened to almost double length: hence *aka* 'well' sounds like [akka], *bite* 'bee' sounds like [bitte], *upe* 'river' sounds like [uppe].

The sounds **f** and **h** are not native to Latvian, and are only found in recent borrowings. Sometimes **h** is pronounced [x] like the 'ch' in 'loch', and it was formerly written as **ch** as well.

If one consonant in a cluster is palatalized, so is the one that follows it: e.g. *ceļš* 'road', *šķirt* 'separate'.

Syllabic consonants

Latvian differs from many other European languages in having voiced 'sonorant' consonants that can constitute a syllable in themselves. The consonants **l, n** and **r** are sonorant and can be syllabic. They never occur in a stressed position (that is, in the first syllable), and usually they are part of a cluster that ends in the masculine nominative ending -s. Examples: *putns* 'bird', *stikls* 'glass', *gudrs* 'wise'.

With other case endings, these consonants are of course not syllabic: e.g. *putnu* 'bird' (acc.), *stiklā* 'in the glass', *gudra* 'wise' (gen.). (Originally there would have been a vowel between the consonant that has become syllabic and the final -s in Latvian. Its much more conservative sister language, Lithuanian, has preserved this vowel: for example, in Lithuanian, 'glass' is *stiklas* and 'clever' is *gudrus*.)

Stress

Stress always occurs on the first syllable of a word (except in a few words which are actually contractions of longer phrases), even if this syllable is a prefix. Remember that stress and length in Latvian are quite independent of each other. Any syllable can be long, but only the first syllable can be stressed. Examples: *kāpt* 'climb', *izkāpt* 'climb out', *upe* 'river', *upē* 'in a/the river', *mašīna* 'car', *mašīnā* 'in a/the car'.

Voiced and unvoiced consonants

Latvian is pronounced very much as it is written, and every letter

is sounded, but if a voiced consonant precedes an unvoiced one, it loses its voicing. Compare **spožs** 'glossy' (m.) but **spoža** (f.); **sirds** 'heart' (nom.) but **sirdi** 'in the heart'; **govs** 'cow' but **govis** 'cows'. The reverse is also true: an unvoiced consonant becomes voiced before a voiced one: e.g. **apziņa** 'consciousness', **nesdams** 'carrying', **cūkgaļa** 'pork'.

Pronunciation exercise

Using the guidelines above, try pronouncing the following words:

zirgs	horse	zirgi	horses
lācis	bear	lāči	bears
kaķis	cat	kaķi	cats
bullis	bull	bulļi	bulls
govs	cow	govis	cows
cūka	pig	cūkas	pigs
putns	bird	putni	birds
mežs	forest	meži	forests
troksnis	noise	trokšņi	noises
roka	hand	rokas	hands
ola	egg	olas	eggs
pirksts	finger	pirksti	fingers
akmens	stone	akmeņi	stones
pasauļe	world	pasauļes	worlds
diena	day	dienas	days
kuģis	ship	kuģi	ships
slēdzis	switch	slēdži	switches
ceļš	road	ceļi	roads
rotāļa	game	rotāļas	games
dziesma	song	dziesmas	songs
aka	well	akas	wells
upe	river	upes	rivers
bite	bee	bites	bees
bloda	dish	blodas	dishes
nāzis	knife	naži	knives
svece	candle	sveces	candles
zvērs	beast	zvēri	beasts
torņis	tower	torņi	towers
mirklis	moment	mirkli	moments

1 Rīgas lidostā

At Riga airport

By the end of this lesson you should know:

- some greetings and forms of address
- about the Latvian noun case system
- about the present tense of verbs
- about number and gender in nouns and adjectives
- how to ask questions

Dialogue 1

Arriving at the airport

Jānis Kalējs, his wife Baiba, their son Imants and daughter Dzidra have just arrived at the airport in Riga, the capital of Latvia. They have flown all the way from Australia to visit the country where Jānis and Baiba were born. This is their children's first visit to Latvia. The first person they meet is, of course, the immigration officer

OFFICER: Labdien! Jūsu pases, lūdzu!

JĀNIS: Labdien! Šeit ir visas mūsu pases: mana pase, mana dēla pase, manas meitas pase. Kur ir tava pase, Baiba?

BAIBA: Šeit.

OFFICER: Paldies. Vai jūs esat pirmo reizi Latvijā?

JĀNIS: Mana ģimene ir pirmo reizi Latvijā, bet es esmu dzimis tepat Rīgā.

OFFICER: Uz cik ilgu laiku Latvijā?

JĀNIS: Apmēram četras nedēļas.

(The officer stamps their passports.)

OFFICER: Lūdzu, jūsu pases. Laimīgi!

JĀNIS: Paldies.

(Note: for the first few lessons translations of the dialogues will be provided to help you.)

OFFICER: Good day! Your passports, please!

JĀNIS: Good day! Here are all our passports: my passport, my son's passport, my daughter's passport. Where is your passport, Baiba?

BAIBA: Here.

OFFICER: Thanks. Is this your first time in Latvia?

JĀNIS: My family is in Latvia for the first time, but I was born right here in Riga.

OFFICER: How long (are you) in Latvia?

JĀNIS: About four weeks.

OFFICER: Here you are, your passports. Good luck!

JĀNIS: Thanks.

četras four (f.) nedēļas weeks
nedēļa week laimīgi good luck

Language points

Greetings



In the dialogue we found these expressions:

labdien, meaning 'good day', is a greeting that Latvians use at any time in the daytime. At more specific times of the day they might say:

labrīt! good morning!
labvakar! good evening!

(In these two words the stress falls on the *second* syllable.)

ar labu nakti!

(with a) good night!

lūdzu, literally 'I beg', is used in most cases where we would say 'please' in English, but in other situations as well: it can also mean 'here you are' when offering something to someone, as the passport officer said when handing back the Kalējs family's passports. It also means 'here you are', 'go ahead' when offering something.

paldies means 'thank you'. Here too, the stress falls on the *second* syllable rather than the first: **paldies**. Like the other examples of irregular stress, this word is an idiomatic joining of two words: it comes from **palīdz Dievs** 'may God help'.

Gender

All nouns, names and adjectives in Latvian are declined according to *gender*. They may be *masculine* (m.) or *feminine* (f.). As there are several cases in which these words are declined, we have to bear in mind the gender of the word we are using. In Latvian, adjectives *agree* with nouns in *gender*, *number* (singular (sg.) or plural (pl.)), and *case*: that is, they take corresponding forms.

You can usually tell easily whether a Latvian noun is masculine or feminine. The masculine ending for nouns is nearly always *-s* or *-is*, and the feminine is *-a* or *-e*, in the *nominative* case, as given in the vocabulary lists. (Gender will not be shown in these lists

Vocabulary

pirmā	the first (f.)	paldies	thank you
lekcija	lesson	vai	(introduces a question)
Rīga	capital of Latvia	šī	this (f.)
Rīgas	Riga's, of Riga	reize	time, occasion
lidosta	airport	pirmo reizi	for the first time
saruna	conversation	Latvija	Latvia
labdien	hello! good day!	Latvija	in Latvia
jūsu	your (pl., polite)	ģimene	family
pase	passport	bet	but
pases	passports	es	I
lūdzu	please; here you are	esmu	am
šeit	here	dzimis	born (m.)
ir	is, are	tepat	right here
visas	all (f.)	Rīgā	in Riga
mūsu	our	uz	for
mana	of my (m.); my (f.)	cik	how (of quantities: how much, how long, etc.)
dēls	son		long
dēla	son's	ilgs	long
manas	of my (f.)	laiks	time (also 'weather')
meita	daughter	ilgu laiku	long time
meitas	daughter's	(acc.)	
kur	where	apmēram	about
tava	your (sg., familiar, f.)		

unless the word is an exception to this rule.) For adjectives, the nominative endings are *always* -s for the masculine (except for a few words ending in -š) and -a for the feminine. (The masculine form will be shown in vocabulary lists.) Here are the nouns we learned in our first dialogue, divided according to gender.

Feminine		Masculine
pase	passport	džels son
meita	daughter	laiks time
reize	time	
ģimene	family	
nedēļa	week	
saruna	conversation	

But notice that gender endings apply to names as well. **Jānis Kalējs** is masculine, and his wife is **Baiba Kalēja**; even the ending of her surname is feminine. Their son is **Imants** and their daughter **Dzidra**, each name having the characteristic gender ending. **Latvija** is itself feminine – as are most place-names.

Number: the plural

Nouns and adjectives have characteristic plural forms which agree as well. For masculine nouns, the ending is usually -i, and for feminine nouns, -as or -es.

For adjectives, the endings are always -i for the masculine, -as for the feminine. This applies to numbers as well:

četras laimīgas meitas	four happy daughters
četri laimīgi dēli	four happy sons

Cases

There are six cases in Latvian, and these are used to express the state or position of numbers, names, nouns and adjectives. We will be looking at these cases in more detail in future lessons, but for the present let us see what these cases actually do.

The *nominative*, as we have seen, expresses the subject of the sentence: the doer of an action, or the subject of the verb 'to be'. The nominative is the form given in the word lists.

The *accusative* expresses the direct object of an action, such as 'you' in the sentence 'I see you'. In Latvian it is also found in some time expressions, such as **pirmo reizi** 'for the first time'.

The *genitive* case expresses possession or belonging: 'Baiba's passport', 'the family's holiday', 'the airport of the city'.

The *dative* case expresses the notion indicated by 'to' or 'for' in English.

The *locative* case, as its name implies, expresses location. It has broadly the function of the prepositions 'in' or 'at' in English. We found a couple of examples in the dialogue: **Rīgā** 'in Riga', **Latvijā** 'in Latvia'. It can also refer to time, as 'in' can in English: **vasarā** 'in summer', **vakarā** 'in the evening'.

The *vocative* case is used for addressing people, and in some instances it has the same form as the nominative, as we saw in the dialogue:

Kur ir tava pase, Baiba? Where is your passport, Baiba?

Latvian grammarians also recognize another case, the *instrumental*, which expresses the means 'by' which something is done. This case differs from the others in having no distinctive ending of its own and being used with the preposition **ar** 'with'. **Ar** governs the accusative case in the singular and the dative in the plural. Therefore the instrumental will not be given in declensions.

We shall look at these cases at greater length in later lessons. With this range of cases, Latvian does not need to make as much use of prepositions as English does, but Latvian does have quite a range of prepositions too, all of which govern particular cases: that is, they influence the case of the noun that follows them.

Present tense of the verb 'to be'

The verb **būt** 'to be' is irregular, and is conjugated in the present tense like this:

es esmu	I am
tu esi	you are (sg., familiar)
viņš ir	he is
viņa ir	she is
tas/tā ir	it is (m./f.)
mēs esam	we are
jūs esat	you are (pl., polite)
viņi/viņas ir	they are (m./f.)
tie/tās ir	they are (non-human, m./f.)

Forms of address

Like many other European nations, Latvians distinguish between familiar and polite ways of addressing each other. **Tu** is used for family members, children and close friends; **jūs** is used for more formal relations with those adults who are less familiar. (If it refers to a single person in the polite form, it is written with a capital **J**: **Jūs**, for example in letter-writing.)

Dialogue 2

A family reunion

Having passed through passport and customs control, the Kalējs family enters the airport terminal. There to meet them is Jānis' brother Guntars and his wife Aija. Jānis and Gunārs have not seen each other for many years, but they recognize each other immediately.

GUNTARS: Sveiki, sveiki! Esiet sveicināti Latvijā!

JĀNIS: Labdien, Gunār! Labdien, Aija! Beidzot esam Latvijā!

Un šī ir mana ģimene: mana sieva Baiba, mans dēls Imants, mana meita Dzidra.

Esiet sveicināti! Vai bērni arī prot latviski?

Jā, viņi prot mazliet latviski, vai ne, Dzidra?

Es saprotu, ja jūs runājat lēni.

GUNTARS: Labi, labi! Runāsim tad visi latviski! Ejam tad ārā un braucam mājās!

AJIA: Šodien ir skaista un silta vasaras diena, un spīd saule.

IMANTS: Bet pie mums Austrālijā ir ziema.

GUNTARS: Hello, hello! Welcome to Latvia!

JĀNIS: Good day, Gunārs! Good day, Aija! We're finally in Latvia!

And this is my family: my wife Baiba, my son Imants and my daughter Dzidra.

Esiet sveicināti! Do the children know Latvian too?

Jā, viņi know a little Latvian, don't you, Dzidra?

I understand if you speak slowly.

GUNTARS: Good, good! Then let's all speak Latvian! Let's go outside and drive home.

AJIA: Today is a beautiful and warm summer day, and the sun's shining.

IMANTS: But at home in Australia it's winter.

Vocabulary

sveiki!	hello!	tad	then
esiet sveicināti!	(be) welcome!	visi	all, everyone
sveicināt	greet, welcome	iet	go (on foot)
beidzot	finally, at last	ejam	we go, let's go
un	and	ārā	outside
sieva	wife	braukt	travel, go (by vehicle)
bērns	child		
arī	also, too	mājās	home (also: uz mājām)
prast	know (how), speak (a language)	šodien	today
	a little	skaists	beautiful
mazliet	(in) Latvian (language)	silts	warm
latviski	yes	vasara	summer
jā	don't you?	diena	day
vai ne?	understand	spīdēt	shine
saprast	if	saule	sun
ja	they	pie	to, at (the home of)
viņi	speaks (dat. case)	mums	us
runāt	speak	pie mums	to/at our place;
lēni	slowly		in our country
labi	good, well	Austrālija	Australia
runāsim	let's speak	ziema	winter

Language points

More greetings

sveiki! or sveiks!
esiet sveicināti!

greetings! hello!
welcome!

The vocative case

The vocative case (see page 13), used for addressing people, is the same as the nominative for feminine names and nouns, but masculine words drop the final -s: Gunārs is addressed as **Gunār**, Jānis as **Jāni** and so on.

Asking questions

If we place **Vai** before a statement we turn it into a question:

Arī bērni prot latviski. The children know Latvian too.
Vai arī bērni prot latviski? Do the children know Latvian too?

Vai ne is added as a 'tag question' after a statement to ask for agreement: 'isn't it?', 'don't you?' and so on:

Viņi prot mazliet latviski, vai ne?
 They know a little Latvian, don't they?

Other question-words: **kur** 'where', **kad** 'when', **kas** 'who/what', **kāpēc** 'why'.

The verb

The form of the verb shown in the word lists is the *infinitive*: 'to speak', 'to shine' and so on. Many of the verbs in Latvian follow a conjugation pattern where the infinitive ends in either **-āt**, **-ēt**, **-īt**, **-ot** or **-ūt**. Quite a few others end in a consonant + **-t**. But many of the more common verbs don't follow this regular pattern. Latvian grammarians traditionally divide the verb conjugations into types and subtypes. For the present we will simply note that the conjugations fall into three basic types: *long* (with the infinitive endings described above), *mixed* and *short*. For more detail about verb conjugations you can refer to the verb tables at the end of the book. Apart from these conjugation types, there are only three *irregular* verbs. We have already met one irregular verb: **būt** 'to be', which is also an auxiliary verb. The other two are **dot** 'give' and **iet** 'go' (see below).

One example of the long conjugation is **runāt**, 'to speak':

es runāju	I speak
tu runā	you speak
viņš/ viņa runā	he/she speaks
mēs runājam	we speak
jūs runājat	you speak
viņi/ viņas runā	they speak

Spīdēt 'to shine', is an example of the mixed conjugation: **spīdu**, **spīdi**, **spīd**, **spīdam**, **spīdat**, **spīd**.

The 'irregular' verbs will have to be learned separately, but even here the endings are much the same as with 'regular' verbs. One that occurred in the dialogue was **iet** 'go'. Compare its present-tense conjugation with the only other truly irregular verb, **dot** 'give':

es eju	I go	es dodu	I give
tu ej	you go	tu dod	you give
viņš/ viņa iet	he/she goes	viņš/ viņa dod	he/she gives
mēs ejam	we go	mēs dodam	we give
jūs ejat	you go	jūs dodat	you give
viņi/ viņas iet	they go	viņi/ viņas dod	they give

Two parallel examples of the short conjugation are **prast** 'know how' and **saprast** 'understand':

es protu	es saprotu
tu proti	tu saproti
viņš/ viņa prot	viņš/ viņa saprot
mēs protam	mēs saprotam
jūs protat	jūs saprotat
viņi/ viņas prot	viņi/ viņas saprot

Notice how the vowel in the stem of the verb changes in these verbs.

For all verbs the singular and plural third-person forms ('he/she' and 'they') are identical.

Adverbs

Adverbs are formed by changing the gender-based ending of the adjective to **-i**:

lēns 'slow' – **lēni** 'slowly' (also **lēnām**);
latvisks 'Latvian' – **latviski** 'in Latvian' (note the lower-case **i**);
skaists 'beautiful' – **skaisti** 'beautifully';
labs 'good' – **labi** 'well'.

Some have the ending **-u**: **vēlu** 'late', **tālu** 'far'.

The genitive singular of feminine nouns

An interesting parallel between Latvian and English is that Latvian feminine nouns form their plurals by adding *-s*, and the genitive singular in the same way:

ģimene 'family' – *ģimenes* 'families' or 'family's': *ģimenes pases* 'the family's passports';
vasara 'summer': *vasaras* 'summers' or 'summer's': *vasaras diena* 'summer's day'

Note that in Latvian the possessor (in the genitive case) always precedes the possessed object: *mana dēla pase* 'my son's passport', *manas meitas pase* 'my daughter's passport'.

Note also that there are no articles in Latvian: *vasaras diena* can mean 'a summer's day' or 'the summer's day'.

'Let's'

Gunārs suggested in the dialogue:

Runāsim tad visi latviski! Then let's all speak Latvian!

To express the first-person plural imperative in Latvian ('let's'), we use the future tense of the verb. We will deal with the future tense in more detail later; for the present just note that it is also used where in English we say 'let's'.

Exercise 1

Fill in the blanks:

- 1 Tu _____ (*I*) protu latviski.
- 2 Tu _____ (*know*) angliiski ('English').
- 3 Viņi _____ (*know*) latviski.
- 4 Mēs _____ (*know*) angliiski.
- 5 _____ (*You*) protat latviski.
- 6 Viņš _____ (*goes*) ārā.
- 7 Es _____ (*go*) mājās.
- 8 Viņa _____ (*speaks*) lēni.

Exercise 2

Translate into Latvian:

- 1 My family and I are in Latvia for the first time.
- 2 Let's speak Latvian!
- 3 We are at Riga airport.
- 4 They are going outside.
- 5 We are travelling home.
- 6 The sun is shining.
- 7 They are travelling slowly.
- 8 I understand Latvian if you speak slowly.

Exercise 3

Turn these statements into questions:

- 1 Baiba prot angliiski.
- 2 Mēs braucam uz mājām.
- 3 Jāni, šodien ir skaista diena.
- 4 Dzidra, tu proti mazliet latviski.
- 5 Bērni brauc uz mājām.
- 6 Jūs esat dzimis šeit.
- 7 Pie jums ir ziema.
- 8 Jūsu ģimene ir pirmo reizi Latvijā.

Exercise 4

Insert the correct endings:

- 1 Pie mums ir skaist _____ diena; vai pie Jums saule spīd spož _____ (*brightly*)?
- 2 Mūsu ģimene _____ pase _____ ir šeit.
- 3 Baiba run _____ latvisk _____ ļoti lēn _____.
- 4 Jāni _____, vai tu prot _____ angliisk _____?
- 5 Austrālij _____ ir ziema, bet šeit Latvij _____ ir vasara.
- 6 Vai Jūs es _____ pirm _____ reiz _____ Rīg _____.
- 7 Es _____ sveicināt _____ pie mums!
- 8 Labdien, Gunār _____! Beidzot esam Latvij _____!

Reading passage

At Rīga airport

Kalēju ģimene – tēvs Jānis, māte Baiba, dēls Imants un meita Dzidra – ir Rīgas lidostā. Pasu darbinieks saka: 'Jūsu pases, lūdzu'

un Jānis dod pasēs. Ģimene ir pirmo reizi Latvijā, bet Jānis ir dzimis šeit, Rīgā. Lidostā viņus gaida tēva brālis Gunārs un viņa sieva Aija.

Additional vocabulary

tēvs	father	saka	says
māte	mother	dot	give
pasu	(gen. pl. of pase)	dod	gives
kontrolē	checking, control	viņus	them (acc.)
darbnieks	official	gaidīt	wait
sacīt	say	brālis	brother
		viņa	his

Questions

(Note: Latvian uses the same word for both 'who' and 'what': **kas** in the nominative and **ko** in the accusative.)

- 1 Kur ir Kalēju ģimene?
- 2 Ko lūdz pasu kontroles darbinieks?
- 3 Vai viņi ir otro reizi Latvijā?
- 4 Kas viņus gaida lidostā?
- 5 Kas ir Gunāra sieva?

2 Pa ceļam uz Rīgu

On the way to Riga

By the end of this lesson you should know about:

- prepositions and noun cases
- how to form the accusative, genitive and dative cases
- how to make commands
- negative verbs, adjectives and adverbs
- cardinal numbers
- 'to have' in Latvian
- how to express definiteness and indefiniteness

Dialogue 1

Travelling home

The Kalējs family travels by car from Riga airport to their relatives' home near the centre of the city

BAIBA: Vai jūs dzīvojat tālu no lidostas?

GUNĀRS: Jā, diezgan tālu. Mūsu dzīvoklis nav tālu no Daugavas upes krasta.

DZIDRA: Skaties, tagad mēs braucam pa Rīgas ielām. Vai tā ir Vecrīga?

GUNĀRS: Nē, vēl neesam Rīgas centrā. Vecrīga ir netālu no pilsētas centra, kas ir Daugavas labajā malā.

BAIBA: Un cik ilgi mēs brauksim?

GUNĀRS: Apmēram divdesmit piecas minūtes vai pusstundu.

AJA: Bet skatieties! Trolejbusi! Jums laikiem nav tādu Austrālijā!

IMANTS: Nē, arī tādu ēku nav, kā šeit! Kāds dzīvoklis jums ir?

GUNĀRS: Mums ir vienkāršs, neliels dzīvoklis. Tas ir diezgan vēcs,

bet ērts, un mums ir lielisks skats no dzīvokļa uz Daugavu.

BAIBA: Do you live far from the airport?

GUNĀRS: Yes, quite far. Our flat is not far from the bank of the Daugava (river).

DZIDRA: Look, now we're driving along the streets of Riga. Is that Old Riga?

GUNĀRS: No, we're not in the centre of Riga yet. Old Riga is not far from the centre of town, which is on the right bank of the Daugava.

BAIBA: And how long will we be travelling?

GUNĀRS: About twenty-five minutes or half an hour.

AUA: But look! Trolleybuses! You probably don't have those in Australia.

IMANTS: No, and we don't have buildings like (the ones) here! What kind of flat do you have?

GUNĀRS: We have a simple little flat. It's quite old, but comfortable, and we have a great view from the flat to the Daugava.

Vocabulary

pa (+ dat.)	along	vecis	old
ceļš (m.)	road, way	Vētrīga	Old Riga (the Old Town of Riga)
uz (+ acc.)	to, onto	nē	no
dzīvot	live	vēl	yet, still
tālu	far	necsam	we are not
no (+ gen.)	from	pilsēta	town, city
diezgan	enough, quite	centrs	centre
dzīvoklis	flat, apartment	netālu	not far
nav	(there) is/are not	labais	right (labaja 'on the right')
Daugava	(the river on which Riga stands)	mala	edge, shore
upe	river	braukšim	we will travel/drive
krasts	shore, bank	divdesmit	twenty
skafities	look	pieci/piecas	five
skaties/-ities!	look!	minūte	minute
mēs	we	vai	or
tagad	now	pusstunda	half an hour
pa (+ acc.)	along, by		(stunda 'hour')

trolejbuss	trolley-bus	neliels	little (not-big)
laikam	probably	diezgan	enough; quite
šāds	such (as this)	ērts	comfortable
tāds	such (as that)	lielisks	splendid, excellent,
kāds	what kind of		great
ēka	building	skats	view
vienkāršs	simple		

Language points

More about prepositions and noun cases

Latvian prepositions correspond in their use fairly approximately to English prepositions ('on', 'for', 'about' and so forth). But the Latvian system of noun cases means that, on the one hand, cases do some of the work that prepositions do in English, as we have already seen (*Rīgā* 'in Riga'), and on the other, the prepositions themselves govern *particular noun cases*. In the title of this dialogue, *Pa ceļam uz Rīgu* 'On the way to Riga', *ceļam* is the *dative* case of *ceļš* 'way' (which is one of a few masculine nouns that end in *š* rather than *s*), and *Rīgu* is the *accusative* form of *Rīga*, governed by *uz*, which here means 'to'. (When *uz* means 'on', it governs another case, the *genitive*.) Elsewhere in the passage we find other prepositions, each governing a particular case; *no dzīvokļa* 'from the flat' appears with the *genitive* case. Prepositions may govern either the *genitive*, the *accusative* or the *dative* case.

The form of the accusative singular

For both masculine nouns ending in *-s/-š* and feminine nouns ending in *-a*, the accusative singular ending (for the direct object of a verb or preposition) is the same: *-u*.

Rīga	Rīgu
Latvija	Latviju
tēvs	tēvu
Baiba	Baibu
meita	meitu
Gunārs	Gunāru

This applies to nearly all the nouns and names we have learned so

far. For feminine nouns ending in -e, such as *ģimene*, the ending for the accusative singular is -i: *ģimeni*.

The form of the genitive singular

The genitive (possessive) ending for feminine nouns and names ending in a vowel is -s, as we have seen: *Baibas, ģimenes, pases* and so on. For masculine nouns ending in -s/-š the ending is -a:

ceļš	ceļa
tēvs	tēva
krasts	krasta

The imperative singular and plural

Skaties!

Look! (sg.)

Skatieties!

Look! (pl.)

The command form of the verb in Latvian differs depending on whether one or more people are being addressed. With all verbs, the imperative singular is the same as the *second-person singular* of the verb (*tu dod* 'you give'; *dod!* 'give!'; *tu nāc* 'you come'; *nāc!* 'come!').

The imperative plural is formed from the *second-person plural* of the present tense by dropping the final -at/-ā and substituting -iet: *jūs dodat* 'you give'; *dodiet!* 'give!'; *jūs runājat* 'you speak'; *runājiet!* 'speak!'

Skatīties 'to look' is a reflexive verb. Reflexive verbs usually, but not always, indicate actions that refer back to the subject – oneself. We shall look at reflexive verbs in more detail later, but the principles for forming the imperative of reflexive verbs are exactly the same, with the reflexive element added on: *skaties/skatīties!* 'look!'; compare *ej!/ejiet!* 'go!'

Quite often in spoken and written colloquial Latvian, however, you will find the plural forms in -at(ies) being used as the imperative instead of -iet(ies). For the sake of clarity, though, it is best to observe the distinction.

The negative verb

The negative form of the verb is simple to construct; we simply put *ne-* in front of the verb:

es nešmu
tu neredzi
viņš neskatās

I am not
you don't see
he's not looking

and so on. The only exception to this rule is the negative form of *ir* 'he/she/it is', which is *nav* 'he/she/it isn't'. (We will learn more about the use of *nav* later on.)

Negative adjectives and adverbs

You will see from some examples in the text (*netālu* 'not far', *neliels* 'small, not big') that even some adjectives and adverbs can be negated with the prefix *ne-*.

Cardinal numbers 1–10

The cardinal numbers from 1 to 9 have both masculine and feminine forms, which agree with the adjectives and nouns they qualify. The forms given here are in the *nominative* case; the numbers 1–9 (and all combinations ending in them) behave like adjectives in Latvian, and can take other case endings, which we will learn later.

Masculine	Feminine
1 viens	viena
2 divi	divas
3 trīs	trīs
4 četri	četras
5 pieci	piecas
6 seši	sešas
7 septiņi	septiņas
8 astoņi	astoņas
9 deviņi	deviņas
10 desmit	

For the numbers from 2 to 9, then, the rule is simple: masculine numbers end in -i and feminine in -as, except *trīs*, where the forms are identical. **Desmit** '10' is indeclinable and has no gender, and it behaves like a collective noun, taking the genitive plural form of the noun it qualifies. Look at these examples:

Man ir septiņi gadi. I am seven years old. ('I have seven years')

Man ir desmit gadu. I am ten years old.

Demonstrative adjectives

The words for 'this', 'that', 'what kind of' and so on behave like adjectives in Latvian; they are declined according to gender, number and case. For the present, let's just learn their nominative singular forms:

	Masculine	Feminine
this	šis	ši
that	tas	tā
what kind of	kāds	kāda
that kind of	tāds	tāda
this kind of	šāds	šāda

In conversation we can also say *šitas* and *šitā* for 'this'.

The dative case

The dative case expresses the idea 'to' or 'for' a person or thing. The characteristic endings for the dative singular are **-am** for masculine nouns ending in **-s**, **-ai** for feminine nouns ending in **-a**, and **-ei** for those ending in **-e** in the nominative:

Gunāram	to/for Gunārs
Baibai	to/for Baiba
tēvam	to/for father
mātei	to/for mother

The dative cases of the personal pronouns are:

man	to/for me
tev	to/for you
viņam	to/for him
viņai	to/for her
tam/tai	to/for it (m./f.)
mums	to/for us
jums	to/for you
viņiem/viņām	to/for them (animate)
tiem/tām	to/for them (inanimate)

But the dative case has another important function too, as we'll see in the next section.

'To have'

Mums ir vienkāršs, neliels dzīvoklis.
We have a simple little flat.

There is no verb in Latvian equivalent to the English verb 'to have'. Instead we use the dative case of the possessor with the appropriate form of the verb 'to be': in the present tense, **ir**. With the pronouns it will be:

man ir	I have	mums ir	we have
tev ir	you have	jums ir	you have
viņam ir	he has	viņiem/viņām ir	they have
viņai ir	she has		

What is possessed appears in the nominative case. Thus if we want to say 'Gunārs has a car' we say **Gunāram ir mašīna**. And 'he has a car' will therefore be: **Viņam ir mašīna**.

Exercise 1

Negate these sentences:

- 1 Mēs braucam uz Rīgu.
- 2 Imants redz autobusu.
- 3 Dzīvoklis ir tālu no centra. (2 possibilities)
- 4 No dzīvokļa viņi var redzēt Daugavu.
- 5 Jūs braucat pa Vecrīgu.
- 6 Viņš iet pie mums.
- 7 Es esu ārā.
- 8 Es saprotu latviski.

Exercise 2

How do you say in Latvian:

- 1 six passports
- 2 three mothers
- 3 eight sons
- 4 seven trolleybuses
- 5 two families
- 6 four daughters

- 7 nine rivers
8 five minutes

Exercise 3

Translate:

- 1 Baiba has an old father.
- 2 Gunārs' family has a small flat.
- 3 My wife has a comfortable chair (**krēsls**).
- 4 We have two young (**jaunas**) daughters.
- 5 He has a new passport.
- 6 They have an old car.
- 7 You (pl.) have a great view.
- 8 Dzidra has a small family.

Exercise 4

Change the above sentences on the model:

- 1 Baiba's father is old.

Exercise 5

Fill in the missing words in these sentences, adjusting the endings to agree in gender where necessary:

- 1 Viņa mašīna ir neērta.
- 2 Baibas dzīvoklis _____.
- 3 _____ nav _____.
- 4 _____ liels.
- 5 Gunāra _____.
- 6 _____ mašīna ir _____.
- 7 _____ liels.

Dialogue 2

We're home!

Gunārs and Aija have brought the Kalejs family home to their flat in a suburb of Riga

GUNĀRS: Mēs esam klāt! Laipni lūdzam pie mums! Es nesu jūsu bagāžu iekšā.

BAIBA: Paldies! Mēs visi esam ļoti noguruši pēc ilgā ceļojuma. Bērni, šī ir tā pati adrese, uz kuru mēs esam tik ilgu gadu rakstījuši vēstules no Austrālijas!

DZIDRA: Jā, tik tiešām! Bet onkul, vai jums ir dārzš?

GUNĀRS: Nē, diemžēl dārza mums nav, tikai balkons. Tikai mājai var būt dārzš, bet mēs dzīvojam dzīvoklī. Taču tuvumā ir liels parks, un tur jūs varat spēlēties.

DZIDRA: Vai mēs varam iet tūlīt ārā?

GUNĀRS: Nē, tikai rīt. Tagad paēdisim, un tad jūs visi laukumā gribēsīt gulēt.

GUNĀRS: *We're here! Welcome to our home! I'm taking your luggage in.*

BAIBA: *Thanks! We're all very tired after the long trip. Children, this is the same address that we've been writing letters to from Australia all these long years!*

DZIDRA: *Yes, so it is! But uncle, do you have a garden?*

GUNĀRS: *No, unfortunately we don't have a garden, just a balcony. Only a house can have a garden, and we live in a flat. But nearby there's a big park, and you can play there.*

DZIDRA: *Can we go outside straight away?*

GUNĀRS: *No, only tomorrow. Now we'll have something to eat, and then you probably all want to sleep.*

Vocabulary

klāt	present, arrived, there	ceļojums	journey
laipni lūdzam	welcome (laipns 'kind'; see lūdzu, lesson 1)	taš pats (m.), tā pati (f.)	the same
nest	carry	adrese	address
bagāža	luggage	uz kurieni	(to) where
iekšā	inside	tik	so, such
vīst (pl.)	all	rakstīt	write
noguruši (m. pl.)	tired (past participle)	rakstījuši (m. pl.)	written (past participle)
pēc (+ gen.)	after	vēstule	letter
ilgs	long	tik tiešām	yes indeed
		onkulis	uncle (or
		tēvocis	tevécs)

dārzs	garden	spēlētis	play (refl.)
diemžēl	unfortunately	tūlīt	immediately,
tikai	only		straight away
balcons	balcony	rīt	tomorrow
māja	house	paēdisim	we'll (have
taču	but, yet		something to)
varēt	can, be able		eat (infin.
tuvumā	nearby (tuvums	paēst	probably
	= 'vicinity')		want
parks	park	laikam	sleep
tur	there	gribēt	
		gulēt	

Language points

The past active participle

Ēsam visi ļoti noguruši. We are all very tired.

Noguruši is the *past active participle* of the verb **nogurt** 'get tired'. Unlike the English participle 'tired', however, the Latvian past participle changes its ending according to gender, number and case. There are four forms of the past active participle, and what we find here is the *masculine plural* form of the participle ending in **-uši**. (Masculine plural forms are used when the genders referred to are mixed.) We find another example of this participle further on in the passage:

... **mēs ēsam tik ilgas gadus rakstījuši vēstules no Austrālijas.**
... we have been writing letters for so many ('such long') years from Australia.

The other forms are masculine singular **-is**; feminine singular **-usi**; feminine plural **-ušas**.

The definite form of the adjective

We have already noted that Latvian has no definite article, no word for 'the', and no indefinite article 'a/an' either. But it does have ways of expressing definiteness and indefiniteness, just like most languages. The Latvian way of showing definiteness is unusual, and is shared with its sister language Lithuanian: it applies only to adjectives (and other qualifying words, such as ordinal numerals

and possessive pronouns, which we will look at later). The form of the adjective will change according to whether we want to say 'a beautiful river' or 'the beautiful river', 'a comfortable flat' or 'the comfortable flat'. 'A beautiful river' and 'a comfortable flat' are, in the nominative, **skaista upe** and **ērts dzīvoklis**. But the endings of the adjectives change if we make them definite: **skaistā upe** and **ērtais dzīvoklis**. In other cases than the nominative, the definite endings are parallel to the indefinite, but with alterations to the vowels; we will examine the definite forms for the other cases in later lessons.

If we gave Latvian names to these first two lessons, we would call them **pirmā lekcija** and **otrā lekcija** 'the first lesson' and 'the second lesson'. **Lekcija** 'lesson' is feminine, and therefore 'the first' and 'the second' appear as **pirmā** and **otrā**.

In the dialogue, Baiba said they were all very tired 'after the long journey', **pēc ilgā brauciena**. Here we see the *genitive* (masculine) form of the definite adjective (governed by the preposition **pēc**), which is simply a longer version of the indefinite form **ilga**.

Classifying verb conjugations

In lesson 1 we saw that the infinitive (dictionary) forms of Latvian verbs all end in **-t**, with the majority falling into groups that end in **-āt**, **-ēt** or **-īt**. Some of the more irregular ones have no vowel before the final **-t** in the infinitive. It is possible to divide Latvian verbs up into various numbered classes, but we will not try to classify them in the lessons; for reference purposes you can find a table of them at the end of the book. It might be useful here, though, to set out the present-tense forms of several of the common new verbs introduced in this dialogue, because they show some of the differences in the ways the verbs behave. Look at these conjugations carefully:

	'can'	'want'	'eat'	'sleep'
	<i>varēt</i>	<i>gribēt</i>	<i>ēst</i>	<i>gulēt</i>
es	varu	gribu	ēdu	gulu
tu	vari	gribi	ēd	guli
viņš/viņa	var	grib	ēd	gul
mēs	varam	gribam	ēdam	gulam
jūs	varat	gribat	ēdat	gulat
viņi	var	grib	ēd	gul

Note the palatalization of **l** in the forms of **gulēt** 'sleep'.
The pronunciation of **e** also varies in **ēst** 'to eat'.

Exercise 6

Translate:

- 1 The child is sleeping after the long journey.
- 2 Uncle carries the luggage inside.
- 3 They are eating, and then they can sleep.
- 4 The family has arrived, but they are all quite tired.
- 5 You (sg.) can play tomorrow. Now go (to) sleep!
- 6 But I want to play straight away!
- 7 No, not until (= only) tomorrow; then you can play (pl.).
- 8 It is a long journey from Australia to Latvia. ('From Australia to Latvia is a long journey.')

Exercise 7

How would you say the following in Latvian?

- 1 the great view
- 2 the small garden
- 3 the old uncle
- 4 the beautiful mother
- 5 the comfortable car
- 6 the big river
- 7 the little building
- 8 the long week

Reading passage

End of the day

Bērni ir ļoti noguruši savā pirmajā vakarā Latvijā. Viņiem bija ļoti ilgs ceļojums no Austrālijas. Kad viņi iet gulēt, tante Aija sāk viņiem lasīt latviešu pasaku par vīru, lāci un lapsu. Bet jau pēc pirmās lappuses abi bērni ir aizmiguši dziļā un saldā miegā.

Vocabulary

ceļojums	journey	pēc	after
tante	aunt	lappuse	page
sākt	begin	abi	both
lasīt	read	aizmigt	fall asleep
pasaka	fairy-tale	dziļš	deep
vīrs	man	salds	sweet
lācis	bear	miegs	sleep
lapsa	fox		

3 Mājās Rīgā

At home in Riga

By the end of this lesson you should know about:

- more numbers, and how to tell the time
- nouns ending in -is
- sound changes in the noun stem
- plural nouns
- how to say 'here' and 'there'; 'something' and 'someone'

Dialogue 1

At breakfast

It is the morning of the Kalejs family's first full day in Latvia. Gunārs and Aija have prepared breakfast for them

GUNĀRS: Labrīt! Vai tā jūs esat gulējuši labi?
DZIDRA: Jā, ļoti labi un ilgi.
GUNĀRS: Brokastis ir jau gatavas. Lūdzi, nāciet pie galda un ēdīsim! Pulkstenis jau ir deviņi.
DZIDRA: Paldies! Kas ir brokastis?
AJA: Tē ir olas, desas, baltmaize un rupjmaize. Jums bērnēm ir sula, un mēs dzeram tēju un kafiju. Baiba, vai tu labprāt dzer kafiju brokastīs?
BAIBA: Jā, paldies, un arī Jānis to dzer.
AJA: Ņemiet, lūdzi. Kā vēl trūkst? Sviests, piens un siers! Parasti mēs ēdam tikai sviestmaizes un dzeram tēju vai kafiju. Bet šodien ir īpaša diena!
IMANTS: Kas tā par sulu?
AJA: Tā ir ābolu sula. Mēs paši gatavojam sulu no saviem āboliem.

GUNĀRS: Jā, mana māsa dzīvo laukos, un viņai ir ābeļdārzs. Viņa dod mums ābolus no savām ābeļēm.

DZIDRA: Bērnišķīgi! Vai mēs brauksim pie viņiem ciemos?

GUNĀRS: Jā, protams, pēc dažām dienām! Viņa jūs gaida!

GUNĀRS: Good morning! Have you slept well?

DZIDRA: Yes, very well, and a long time.

GUNĀRS: Breakfast is ready. Please come to the table and let's eat! It's already nine o'clock.

DZIDRA: Thanks! What's for breakfast?

AJA: Here are eggs, sausages, white bread and brown bread. For you children there's juice, and we're drinking tea and coffee. Baiba, do you like drinking coffee at breakfast?

BAIBA: Yes, thanks, and Jānis drinks it too.

AJA: Help yourselves, please! What's still missing? Butter, milk and cheese! We usually eat just sandwiches (or: bread and butter) and drink tea and coffee. But today's a special day!

IMANTS: What kind of juice is this?

AJA: It's apple juice. We make the juice ourselves from our own apples.

GUNĀRS: Yes, my sister lives in the country, and she has an apple-orchard. She gives us apples from her trees.

DZIDRA: Wonderful! Will we be going to visit her?

GUNĀRS: Yes, of course, in a few days' time. She's expecting you!

Vocabulary

gulējuši	slept (past participle, pl.)	maize	bread
ilgi	long (time, adverb)	baltmaize	white bread ('white')
brokastis (f. pl.)	breakfast	rupjmaize	rye bread ('coarse')
gatavs	ready	sula	juice
galds	table	tēja	tea
pulkstenis	clock (with a numeral: 'o'clock')	kafija	coffee
		labprāt	willingly, liking to
		dzert	drink
		trūkst	be missing
ola	egg		(irregular; trūkst 'is missing')
desa	sausage		

ņemt	take (ņemiet 'help yourselves')	gatavot	make, prepare
sviests	butter	laukos	in the country
piens	milk	ābeldārzs	apple-orchard
siers	cheese		(ābele 'apple-tree')
sviestmaize	sandwich, bread and butter	brīnišķīgs	wonderful
īpašs	special	(braukt)	(go) visiting
ābols	apple	ciemos	
paši	(our)selves	dažs, pl. daži	some, a few
savs	(one's, my, your, our, etc.) own	protams	of course

Language points

Masculine nouns ending in -is

A number of masculine nouns end in **-is** rather than just **-s**, and they are declined slightly differently. **Pulkstenis** 'clock' is one of them. Other examples are **pilsonis** 'citizen', **mākonis** 'cloud', **kakšis** 'cat', **zakšis** 'hare'. **Pulkstenis** is declined like this in the singular:

nom.	pulkstenis
acc.	pulksteni
gen.	pulkstēpa
loc.	pulkstenī
dat.	pulkstenim

Pay special attention to the genitive form, **pulkstēpa**. If a single consonant preceding the **-is** is not already palatalized (see Pronunciation, page 6), then it will become so in the genitive.

Telling the time; numbers above 10

Pulkstenis ir jau deviņi.

It's already nine o'clock.

Answering the question **cikos** 'at what time' is fairly straightforward in Latvian. We already know the numbers 1–10, but in order to tell the time we need to know how to form numbers beyond that. The numbers from 11 to 20 are:

- 11 **vienpadsmit**
- 12 **divpadsmit** (usually pronounced **diwpadsmit**)
- 13 **trīspadsmit**
- 14 **četrpadsmit**
- 15 **piecpadsmit**
- 16 **sešpadsmit**
- 17 **septiņpadsmit**
- 18 **astoņpadsmit**
- 19 **deviņpadsmit**
- 20 **divdesmit** (usually pronounced **diwdesmit**)

Other multiples of 10 are formed in the same way as 20:

- 30 **trīsdesmit**
- 40 **četrdesmit**
- 50 **piecdesmit**

and so on. Compound numbers are formed by simply adding the number as a separate word:

- 35 **trīsdesmit pieci**
- 47 **četrdesmit septiņi**
- 86 **astoņdesmit seši**

'Hundred' is **simts**.

To say 'the time is ...' in Latvian we use the phrase **Pulkstenis ir ...** 'What is the time?' is **Cik (ir) pulkstenis?:**

Cik pulkstenis? Divi. What is the time? Two o'clock.

'At' a precise hour is expressed with (**pulksten** +) the number in the locative plural, which ends in **-os**. 'At what time' is **cikos**:

Cikos jūs ejat uz darbu? (Pulksten) astoņos.

At what time do you go to work? At eight o'clock.

For exact half-hours we add **pus-** 'half' to the number. Note that in Latvian 'half past' is expressed as half of the next hour:

Pulkstenis ir pusdeviņi.

The time is half past eight. ('half nine')

'Quarter' is **ceturksnis**, and this is how we express quarter-hours:

Ir ceturksnis pāri sešiem. It is a quarter past six.

But more commonly people simply say **piecpadsmit** 'fifteen' for 'quarter'.

Note the use of the preposition **pāri** (+ dat. pl.) for 'past'.
Knowing this, we can now form other clock-times 'past' the hour:

divdesmit trīs minūtes pāri diviem
twenty-three minutes past two

Ir sešpadsmit minūtes pāri četriem
It's sixteen minutes past four.

(Note also: **pāri vienam** 'past one', **pāri trijiem** 'past three'.
Lastly, minutes 'to' the hour are expressed as the next hour

'without' (**bez** + dat. pl.) the number of minutes, in this way:

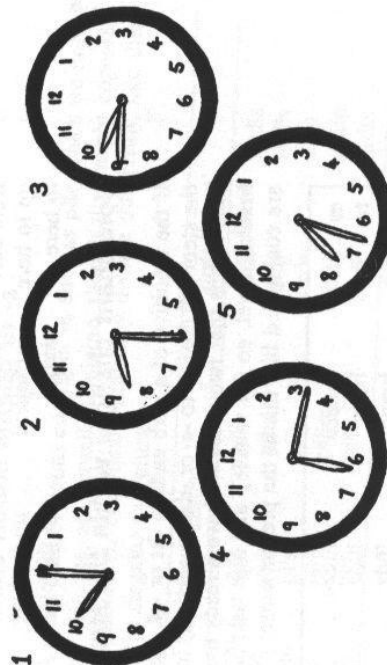
bez divdesmit četrām minūtēm pieci
twenty-four minutes to five

bez vienpadsmit minūtēm divpadsmit
eleven minutes to twelve

(With singular words, however, **bez** takes the genitive: **bez vienas minūtes** 'one minute to'; **bez ceturkšņa viens** 'a quarter to one'.)

Exercise 1

Write in words the clock times shown on these clock faces:



Exercise 2

Answer these questions in your own way:

- 1 Ko jūs ēdat brokastīs?

- 2 Ko jūs dzerat brokastīs?
- 3 Cikos jūs ēdat brokastīs?
- 4 Cikos jūs ejat uz skolu/darbu?
- 5 Cikos jūs ejat mājās no skolas/darba?
- 6 Cik tagad ir pulkstenis?

Dialogue 2

Looking around Riga

The family starts preparing to spend a day touring Riga

BAIBA: Ir laiks iet! Bet vispirms, vai es tev varu palīdzēt virtuvē,
Aija?

Aija: Nē, tev ir atvaļinājums! Ārā ir skaists, saulains laiks, tāpēc
iesim ārā iepazīties ar pilsētu. Rīgā ir tik daudz, ko redzēt!

DZIDRA: Vai mēs brauksim ar autobusu?

GUNĀRS: No šejienes mēs varam braukt ar tramvaju uz centru.

IMANTS: Labi! Es gribu braukt ar tramvaju!

GUNĀRS: Bet vai ir kaut kas, ko jūs īpaši gribat darīt Rīgā, Jāni
un Baiba?

BAIBA: Es gribu redzēt Rīgas centru, vecās un jaunās ēkas,
veikalus un parkus.

JĀNIS: Arī mani interesē veikali, bet visvairāk gribu pastaigāties
pa Rīgu un redzēt vecās ēkas Vecrīgā. Esmu mantojis
no mūsu tēva interesi par pagātni un Latvijas vēsturi.

GUNĀRS: Tas ir labi, jo es gribu tev vēlāk rādīt Siguldas seno pili,
kas ir īsa brauciens attālumā no Rīgas, kā tu jau zini.
Tagad braucam uz pilsētu!

BAIBA: *It's time to go outside! But first, can I help you in the
kitchen, Aija?*

Aija: *No, you're on holiday! It's beautiful sunny weather
outside, so we'll go out and get familiar with the town.
There's so much in Riga to see!*

DZIDRA: *Will we be going by bus?*

GUNĀRS: *From here we can go by tram to the centre.*

IMANTS: *Good! I want to travel on a tram!*

GUNĀRS: *But is there anything you especially want to do in Riga,
Jānis and Baiba?*

BAIBA: *I want to see the centre of Riga, the old and new build-
ings, the shops and parks.*

JĀNIS:

I'm interested in the shops too, but most of all I want to walk through Riga and see the old buildings in Old Riga. I've inherited from our father an interest in the past and Latvia's history.

GUNĀRS:

That's good, because later I want to show you the ancient Sigulda castle, which is a short journey away from Riga, as you already know. But now, let's go to town!

Vocabulary

laiks	time; weather	jauns	new
vispirms	first of all	interesēt	interest
palīdzēt (+ dat.)	help	visvairāk	most of all
virtuve	kitchen	pastaigāties	walk, stroll
atvaļinājums	holiday	mantot	inherit
saulains	sunny	interese	interest
iepazīties (ar)	get familiar (with), get to know	par	for, about (here: 'in')
daudz	much	pagātne	the past
ko redzēt	to see	vēsture	history
šeļenge	here (no šeļenes 'from here')	vēlāk	later
	anything, something (only kas is declined)	rādīt	show
	especially	sens	ancient
	do	Sigulda	small town and castle near Riga
	shop	pils (f.)	castle
īpaši		īss	short
darīt		brauciens	trip
veikals		attālums	distance
		zināt	know

Language points

'Something', 'someone'

In the dialogue, Gunārs asked Jānis and Baiba

Vai ir kaut kas, ko īpaši gribat darīt Rīgā?

Is there anything you especially want to do in Riga?

We have already seen that **kas** means both 'who' and 'what' in Latvian, as both an interrogative and a relative pronoun. This word, preceded by **kaut**, means 'something'. **Kaut** is not declined, but **kas** is declined like this:

nom.	kas
acc.	ko
gen.	kā (but this is not used as a relative pronoun)
dat.	kam

There is no proper locative case of **kas**, unless we include **kur** 'where'. 'Somewhere' is **kaut kur**. 'Some kind of' is **kaut kāds**; **kāds** is declinable. 'Someone' is **kāds**.

'Here' and 'there'

The indeclinable adverbs **šeit** and **tur** are used to mean 'here' and 'there' respectively, where no movement is implied. If we wish to say 'from here', 'to there' and so on, we must use different locations, the most common of which are:

from here	no šejienes	from there	no turienes
up to here	uz šejieni	up to there	uz turieni
to here	šurp	to there	turp

Consonant changes within the stem

If the infinitive of a verb ends in **-kt** or **-gt**, the final **-k-** or **-g-** of the stem will change to **-c-** or **-dz-** respectively in the present tense. This means that two verbs we have already met in certain forms, **braukt** 'travel, go (by vehicle)' and **lūgt** 'ask, beg' (**lūdzu** 'please') are conjugated like this in the present tense:

es	braucu	lūdzu
tu	brauc	lūdz
viņš/viņa	brauc	lūdz
mēs	braucam	lūdzam
jūs	braucat	lūdzat
viņi/viņas	brauc	lūdz

Plural declensions of masculine and feminine nouns

	veikali (m.) 'shops'	lietas (f.) 'things'	pilsētas (f.) 'towns'
nom.	veikali	lietas	pilsētas
acc.	veikalus	lietas	pilsētas
gen.	veikalu	lietu	pilsētu
dat.	veikaliem	lietām	pilsētām
loc.	veikalos	lietās	pilsētās

Feminine nouns ending in -s

	<i>pils</i> 'castle'	<i>sirds</i> 'heart'
nom.	<i>pils</i>	<i>sirds</i>
acc.	<i>pili</i>	<i>sirdi</i>
gen.	<i>pils</i>	<i>sirds</i>
dat.	<i>pilij</i>	<i>siržu</i>
loc.	<i>pili</i>	<i>sirdim</i>

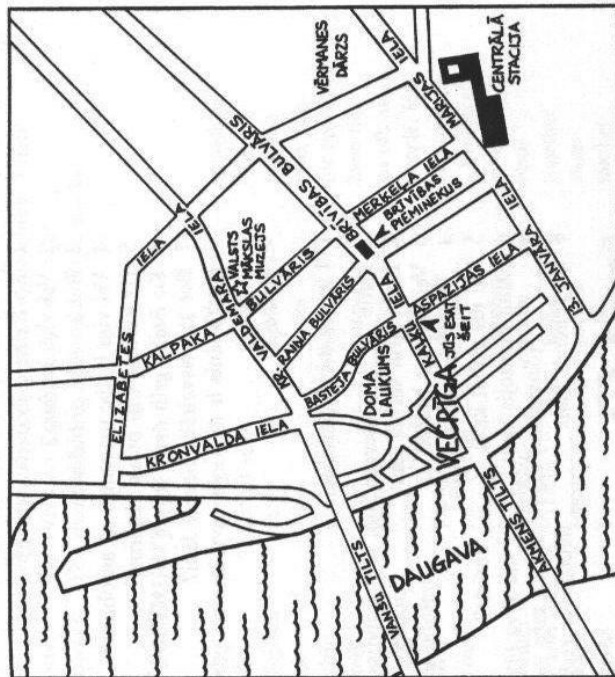
Note that the forms of the nominative and genitive singular are identical.

In the dialogue, Jānis said:

Esmu mantojis no mūsu tēva interesi par pagātni un Latvijas vēsturi.

I've inherited from our father an interest in the past and Latvia's history.

Notice here the cases governed by the preposition **par**. In the singular, **par** takes the accusative case (**vēsturi**), but in the plural, *all prepositions govern the dative case*, as here (**senām lietām**). Prepositions only govern different cases in the singular.



Language in action

Below is a list of places shown on the map of Riga. Imagine you are standing at the point indicated on the map, and explain to a stranger how to get from 'here' to each of them. You may need

We shall be meeting this change of stem consonant later in other connections too.

Plural declensions of masculine and feminine nouns

We already know how to form the nominative plural of the majority of nouns: masculine nouns ending in *-s* and feminine nouns ending in a vowel. Here is how most nouns decline in full in the plural:

	<i>veikali</i> (m.) 'shops'	<i>lietas</i> (f.) 'things'	<i>pilsētas</i> (f.) 'towns'
nom.	veikali	lietas	pilsētas
acc.	veikalus	lietas	pilsētas
gen.	veikalu	lietu	pilsētu
dat.	veikaliem	lietām	pilsētām
loc.	veikalos	lietās	pilsētās

Note the similarities between nominative and accusative forms in the feminine and between the genders in the genitive plural.

Feminine nouns ending in *-s*

A small class of nouns ending in *-s*, such as *pils*, which we find in the dialogue, are actually feminine, though they might appear to be masculine. This means that they decline differently, like these in the singular and plural:

	<i>pils</i> 'castle'	<i>sirds</i> 'heart'
nom.	pils	sirds
acc.	pili	sirdi
gen.	pils	sirdi
dat.	pilij	sirds
loc.	pilī	sirdij
		sirdī
		sirdīs

Note that the forms of the nominative and genitive singular are identical.

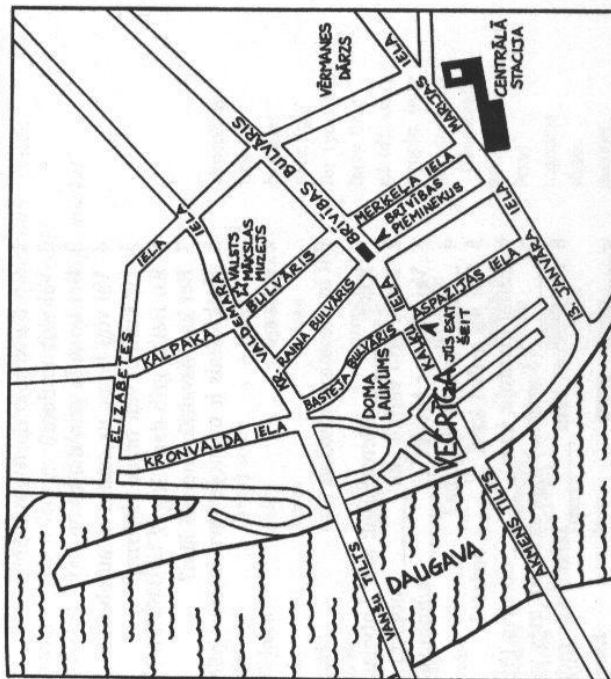
Prepositions and plural nouns

In the dialogue, Jānis said:

Esmu mantojis no mūsu tēva interesi par pagātni un Latvijas vēsturi.

I've inherited from our father an interest in the past and Latvia's history.

Notice here the cases governed by the preposition *par*. In the singular, *par* takes the accusative case (*vēsturi*), but in the plural, all prepositions govern the *dative case*, as here (*senām lietām*). Prepositions only govern different cases in the singular.



Language in action

Below is a list of places shown on the map of Riga. Imagine you are standing at the point indicated on the map, and explain to a stranger how to get from 'here' to each of them. You may need

extra vocabulary, which you will find in the English-Latvian glossary at the end of the book. Make liberal use of prepositions such as **uz**, **no** and any others you know. Here's the list of places to get to:

- 1 Brīvības piemineklis (Freedom Monument)
- 2 Valsts mākslas muzejs (National Art Gallery)
- 3 Doma laukums (Cathedral Square)
- 4 Akmens tilts (Stone Bridge)
- 5 Centrālā stacija (Central Station)

Exercise 3

Answer these questions about the dialogue:

- 1 Ko Baiba grib darīt virtuvē?
- 2 Vai viņa to dara?
- 3 Bet ko Aija grib darīt?
- 4 Vai viņi brauc uz centru ar autobusu?
- 5 Uz kurieni viņi brauc vispirms?
- 6 Ko Baiba grib darīt Rīgā?
- 7 Bet kas visvairāk interesē Jāni?
- 8 No kā Jānis ir mantojis savu interesi par pagātni?

Exercise 4

Fill in the missing words:

- 1 Kaut _____ interesē Jāni; tā ir Latvijas vēsture.
- 2 Baiba grib varbūt kaut _____ nopirkt.
- 3 Vai viņi var braukt ar _____ autobusu?
- 4 _____ ir laba ēstgriba?
- 5 Vai jūs gribat kaut _____ redzēt?
- 6 Esmu mantojis kaut _____ no sava tēva.
- 7 _____ (Someone) man saka, ka mēs varam iet ārā.
- 8 No šejienes kaut _____ tālumā var redzēt pilsētu.

Exercise 5

Put the objects of the prepositions into the plural:

- 1 Viņi brauc uz senu pilsētu.
- 2 Viņi nāk no tālas zemes (= 'land').
- 3 Brokastis ir uz galda.

- 4 Viņa iet pa Rīgas ielu.
- 5 Viņš runā par kādu lietu.
- 6 Baiba iet uz veikalu.
- 7 Viņi ēd brokastis kopā (= 'together') ar savu brāli.
- 8 Meitenes brauc ar trolejbusu.

Reading passage

At breakfast

Ir saulaina diena, un Kalēju ģimene ir labi un ilgi gulējusi. Tagad viņi grib iet ārā un apskatīt Rīgu, bet vispirms ir laiks ēst brokastis. Gunārs un Aija lūdz viņus pie galda, un viņi nāk. Uz galda ir rupjmaize, baltmaize, olas, desas, sviests un siers. Pieaugušie dzer tēju un kafiju, bet bērni – sulu. Pēc tam viņi runā par to, ko darīs pilsētā. Bērni grib braukt ar trolejbusu uz centru, Baiba grib iet uz veikaliem, bet Jāni un arī viņa brāli Gunāru visvairāk interesē senas ēkas.

Note about punctuation: most punctuation in Latvian is much the same as in English, but you should note that the dash – is used where unnecessary repetition is omitted, usually of a verb. The sentence could have read **Pieaugušie dzer tēju un kafiju, bet bērni dzer sulu** ('The adults drink tea and coffee, but the children drink juice'), but **dzer** is omitted as unnecessary repetition.

From now on the 'broad' and 'narrow' *e/ē* will no longer be marked. Don't worry unduly about the difference, as not all Latvians make the distinction anyway. But as a general rule, we can say that the *e/ē* is broad if the only other vowels in the basic form of the word are *e* or *i*. Otherwise, the *e/ē* may be broad or narrow.

4 Rīgas veikalos

Shopping in Riga

By the end of this lesson you should know more about:

- word order
- the comparative degree of the adjective
- the past and future tenses of verbs
- the subjunctive mood of verbs and how to say 'if ...'
- nouns ending in **-us**
- compound and diminutive nouns

Dialogue 1

Exploring Riga

The Kalējs family has been shown around Riga by their hosts. Now they are deciding where to go next.

GUNĀRS: Nu jau esam apskatījuši daudzus veikalus. Varbūt jūs jau esat noguruši. Iesim uz kādu kafējnicu! Es zinu labu kafējnicu tuvumā.

BAIBA: Labi, esmu jau sapirkusi daudz vairāk, nekā domāju, un tā ir tikai mūsu pirmā diena. Es soliņu aizvest dažus suvenīrus no Rīgas saviem latviešu draugiem Austrālijā.

GUNĀRS: Arī tu, Imant, esi kaut ko nopircis!

IMANTS: Es dabāju šokolādi!

DZIDRA: Tu dabūji šokolādi, bet es dabāju skaistu jaunu aproci!
AJA: Ai, cik tā ir jauka! Bet Baiba, tu vēl neko neesi nopirkusi sev.

BAIBA: Vēl nespēju aiziet uz tautas dailrades veikalu. Gribu sev nopirkt dzintara krelles.

JĀNIS: Tad iesim kopā pēc kafējnicas!

GUNĀRS: Jā, un tad es gribētu jums parādīt Rīgas tirgu!

GUNĀRS: Well, we've already been to many shops. Perhaps you're tired by now. Let's go to a café! I know a good café nearby.

BAIBA: Good, I've already bought much more than I thought (I would), and this is only our first day. But I promised to buy some souvenirs from Riga for my Latvian friends in Australia.

GUNĀRS: You've bought something too, Imants!

IMANTS: I got chocolate!

DZIDRA: You got chocolate, but I got a beautiful new bracelet!

AJA: Oh, how nice it is! But Baiba, you haven't bought anything for yourself yet.

BAIBA: I haven't had time yet to go off to the folk handicraft shop. I want to buy myself some amber beads.

JĀNIS: Then let's go together after the café!

GUNĀRS: Yes, and I'd like to show you Riga market!

Vocabulary

varbūt	perhaps	šokolāde	chocolate
kāds	(here) some	jauns	new
kafējnica	café	aproce	bracelet
zināt	know	jauks	nice, fine
sapirkt	buy, purchase	sev	for (your)self
vairāk	more	pašpēt	have time
nekā	than	aiziet	go off, away
domāt	think, intend	tauta	people, folk
solīt	promise	dailrade	art, creation, handicrafts
aizvest	take (away, back)	dzintars	amber
suvenīrs	souvenir	krelle	bead
latviešu (adj.)	Latvian	kopā	together
draugs	friend	parādīt	show
nopirkt	buy	tirgus	market
dabūt	get		

Language points

A note about word order

Latvian word order is much freer than English, and therefore you should not be surprised to find variations on the normal word order that Latvian shares with English, which is basically subject-verb-object. Sometimes, for reasons of style or emphasis, elements of the sentence can be shifted away from this pattern; for example, in the dialogue we found:

Ari tu, Imant, esi kaut ko nopircis.

You've bought something too, Imants.

where the participle *nopircis* 'bought' was shifted to the end - something we cannot do in English.

The comparative degree of the adjective and adverb

Esmu jau nopirkusi daudz vairāk, nekā domāju.

I've already bought much more than I thought (I would).

Vairāk 'more' is the comparative degree of **daudz** 'much'. The usual way to form the comparative ('more') degree of the adjective is to add **-āk-** to the stem (in this case the stem is irregular). This applies to both adjectives and adverbs. The *adverbial* form adds nothing to this syllable, **-āk**, whereas the *adjectival* form takes the normal adjectival endings. In comparisons, 'than' is expressed by the word **nekā**. Here are some examples:

Runā lēnāk!

Speak more slowly!

Gundega ir skaistāka meitene nekā Dace.

Gundega is a more beautiful girl than Dace.

Nāciet tuvāk!

Come closer!

Šodien ir siltāka diena nekā vakar.

Today is a warmer day than yesterday.

Rīga ir interesantāka pilsēta nekā gaidīju.

Rīga is a more interesting city than I expected.

The past tense

The formation of the past tense in Latvian is quite straightforward. Those verbs (always of at least two syllables) whose infinitive ends in **-āt**, **-ēt**, **-īt**, **-ot** and **-ūt** drop the **-t** and add the following past-tense endings to that long vowel: **-ju**, **-ji**, **-ja**, **-jām**, **-jāt**, **-ja**. This can be seen from the following examples:

es	domāju	spēju	soliju	dzīvoju	dabūju
tu	domāji	spēji	soliji	dzīvoji	dabūji
viņš	domāja	spēja	solija	dzīvoja	dabūja
mēs	domājām	spējām	solījām	dzīvojām	dabūjām
jūs	domājāt	spējāt	solījāt	dzīvojāt	dabūjāt
viņi	domāja	spēja	solija	dzīvoja	dabūja

For all other verbs, that is, the short verbs with an infinitive of one syllable ending in **-t**, and the irregular verbs **būt**, **dot** and **iet**, add the following endings to the stem of the past tense:

es	biju	devu	gāju
tu	biji	devi	gāji
viņš	bija	deva	gāja
mēs	bijām	devām	gājām
jūs	bijāt	devāt	gājāt
viņi	bija	deva	gāja

As you see from these examples, the past-tense endings are quite regular; it is only the stem itself that is irregular. In due course we shall learn how to find the stem of the past tense of the short verbs. The verb table at the end of the book will also help you.

The subjunctive/conditional: 'should/would'

In the dialogue, Gunārs said:

Es gribētu jums parādīt Rīgas tirgu.

I would like to show you Riga market.

The 'would' in this sentence is expressed by simply adding **-u** to the infinitive of the verb **gribēt** 'want'. This rule applies to all verbs without exception, and to all persons of the verb: the conjugation is invariable. It also applies to both the condition (**ja** 'if') and the result ('... then'). Here are some examples:

Es būtu priecīgs, ja jūs nāktu kopā ar mums.
I would be pleased if you came with us.

Vai jūs gribētu iet uz veikalu?
Would you like ('want') to go to the shop?

Jā, es ietu labprāt.
Yes, I would gladly go.

Ja mums būtu vairāk laika, tad mēs redzētu vēl vairāk.
If we had more time, then we would see still more.

Nouns ending in -us

A small group of nouns, mostly masculine, ends in **-us** in the nominative, and has a slightly different declension from other masculine nouns. **Tirgus** 'market' is one of them:

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
nom.	tirgus	tirgi
acc.	tirgu	tirgus
gen.	tirgus	tirgu
dat.	tirgum	tirgiem
loc.	tirgū	tirgos

Other common nouns of this type include **alus** 'beer', **medus** 'honey', **lietus** 'rain', **ledus** 'ice'. Generally these nouns are 'uncountable', so their plural forms are seldom used.

Exercise 1

Put these sentences into the past tense:

- 1 Es eju uz tirgu.
- 2 Mēs esam Rīgas tirgū.
- 3 Imants dabū šokolādi.
- 4 Viņam ir jauna mašīna.
- 5 Saule spīd spoži (= 'brightly').
- 6 Jūs dzīvojat dzīvoklī.
- 7 Mēs nespējam aiziet uz veikalu.
- 8 Es tev apsolīju nopirkt šokolādi.

Exercise 2

Put the same sentences into the subjunctive.

Dialogue 2

In a café

The family are sitting in a Riga café with their hosts, discussing what they have seen. They order refreshments from the waitress

- GUNĀRS: Lūdzu, trīs tases tējas un vienu kafiju.
OFICIANTE: Ko vēl?
BAIBA: Varbūt es paņemšu arī magoņaizīti. Bet bērniem – nu, ko jūs gribat?
DZIDRA: Apelsīnu sulu!
IMANTS: Es gribu karstu šokolādi.
OFICIANTE: Diemžēl mums nav.
IMANTS: Tad limonādi.
GUNĀRS: Nu, jāni, ko tu domā par Vecrīgu?
JĀNIS: Mani pārsteidza tas, ka tik daudz ēku saglabājušas no pagājušajiem gadsimtiem vēl mūsu laikā, un samērā labā stāvoklī. Bet es gribētu redzēt vēl vairāk.
GUNĀRS: Kā es jau agrāk minēju, vēlāk brauksim uz vienu senu pili, kas varētu interesēt visu ģimeni.
GUNĀRS: *Three cups of tea and one coffee, please.*
WAITRESS: *What else?*
BAIBA: *Perhaps I'll also take a poppy-seed bun. But for the children – well, what do you want?*
DZIDRA: *Orange juice!*
IMANTS: *I want hot chocolate.*
WAITRESS: *Unfortunately we don't have (it).*
IMANTS: *Then lemonade.*
GUNĀRS: *Well, Jānis, what do you think of Old Riga?*
JĀNIS: *I was surprised that so many buildings are preserved from previous centuries even in our day, and in relatively good condition. But I'd like to see even more.*
GUNĀRS: *Yes, and as I mentioned earlier, later we'll go to an old castle that will probably interest the whole family.*

Vocabulary

tase	cup	saglabāties	be preserved
ņemt	take	pagājis	past
maģonmaizīte	Latvian poppy-seed bun	gadsimts	century
	(magone 'poppy')	samērā	comparatively, relatively
apelsāns	orange	stāvoklis	state, condition
karsts	hot	kā	how, as
limonāde	lemonade	agrāk	earlier (agrs 'early')
domāt	think	minēt	mention
pārsteigt	surprise		

Language points

Compound nouns

Compound nouns can be formed fairly freely in Latvian. The first element of the compound may lose its gender marking, and if this ending is *-e* (f.) or *-is* (m.), then the preceding consonant is palatalized where possible. We met an example of a compound in the dialogue:

magone + maizīte = maģonmaizīte 'poppy(-seed) bun'

Diminutives

Maizīte 'bun' is the diminutive form of maize 'bread'. Diminutives are very common in Latvian, being frequently used to express not only smallness but also affection. There are several diminutive endings, but *-ītis* (m.) and *-īte* (f.) are among the commonest. (See also the Glossary of Grammatical Terms at the end of the book.)

The future tense

When ordering in the café, Baiba said:

Varbūt es papemšu arī maģonmaizīti.
Perhaps I'll also take a poppy-seed bun.

To form the future tense of any verb, we remove the final *-t* of the infinitive and add these endings: *-šu, -si, -s, -sim, -sit, -s*. The examples show the long conjugation and the three irregular verbs *būt, iet* and *dot*:

es	dzīvošu	'I will live'	būšu	'I will be'	iešu	'I will go'
tu	dzīvosi		būsi		iesi	
viņš	dzīvos		būs		ies	
mēs	dzīvosim		būsim		iesim	
jūs	dzīvosit		būsit		iesit	
viņi	dzīvos		būs		ies	
es	došu	'I will give'				
tu	dosi					
viņš	dos					
mēs	dosim					
jūs	dosit					
viņi	dos					

You will recognize *iesim* from previous lessons as 'let's go'. The future tense is also used like this for the first person plural imperative, 'let's'.

For verbs of the short conjugation with infinitives ending in *-st* (such as *prast, saprast*), however, the rule is slightly different. The same future-tense endings are added to the *past-tense stem* of these verbs, plus a linking *-ī*. Examples:

	prast	'know how'	sist	'hit'
es	pratišu		sītišu	
tu	pratīsi		sītīsi	
viņš	pratīs		sītīs	
mēs	pratīsim		sītīsim	
jūs	pratīsīt		sītīsīt	
viņi	pratīs		sītīs	

'There is not'; 'we don't have'

In lesson 2 we learned how to say 'to have' in Latvian. To negate the idea of the verb 'to have', we use a similar construction: the dative of the possessor with the negative of the verb 'to be', which in the negative is *nav*. So when the waitress said they didn't have any hot chocolate she used this construction:

Unfortunately we don't have it.

Dienžēl karstas šokolādes nav.

Unfortunately there isn't any hot chocolate.

Diemžēl mums karstas šokolādes nav.

Unfortunately we don't have any hot chocolate.

In the dialogue, Jānis said:

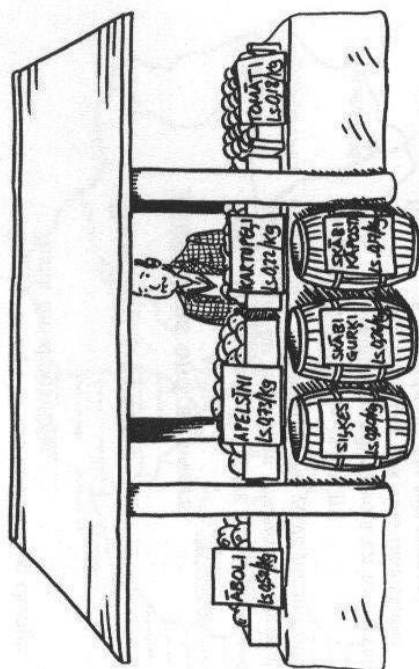
Mani pārsteidza tas, ka tik daudz ēku saglabājušās.

was surprised (= It surprised me) that so many buildings are preserved.

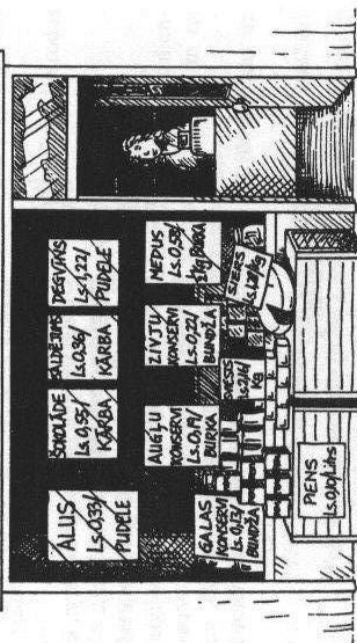
The word for 'that' when introducing a clause is **ka**. Notice the other features of this construction: **tas** 'the fact' (= it) is always followed by a comma; and the word **tas** appears in the *nominative*, so it is the subject of the sentence. Literally the sentence begins 'Me surprised it, that ...' As we shall see in later lessons, Latvian avoids passive constructions like 'I was surprised by ...' in many cases where English prefers the passive.

Put the sentences in exercise 1 into the future tense.

See how much you understand of these Riga shop-window and market-stall displays. Prices are in the Latvian currency, the **lats** (pl. **lati**). The **lats** is divided into 100 **santimi**. Vocabulary to help you can be found at the end of the book.



PĀRTIKAS VEIKALS



Exercise 4

Now imagine you are going into each of the shops or stalls as shown above. Pick an item on display at each place that you would like to buy. If you are working with a partner, so much the better – get your partner to respond as the shop assistant or stallholder, but even if you are working alone:

Ask to see the item.

Ask how much it is, to check the price.

Say you will take it.
Pay for it with 10 lats and receive change.
Thank the shopkeeper.

Reading passage

Questions and answers

Later, Gunārs and Aija drive the family to the ancient castle of Sigulda, not far from Riga. Imants is very interested in the history of the place, and he asks the guide for information about it

IMANTS: Kas dzīvoja šādā pilī?

GIDS: Senlatviešu pili dzīvoja un to pārvaldīja virsaitis. Viņam bija pakļauta visa viņa lielā saime.

IMANTS: Kas piederēja pie pils saimes?

GIDS: Pie tās piederēja virsaiša ģimenes locekļi un tuvākie radnieki; bez tam – daudzie kalpi un kalpones, kas apstrādāja virsaiša plašos laukus. Visbeidzot pie pils saimes piederēja vēl virsaiša draugi, viņa kara biedri.

IMANTS: Ko viņi darīja?

GIDS: Draugi bija pils pastāvīgie aizsargi, kā arī virsaiša tuvākie palīgi un padomnieki visās lietās.

IMANTS: Kas notika uzbrukuma gadījumā vai kara laikā?

GIDS: Kara laikā sapulcējās kaujasspējīgie vīriņi no visa pils novada, kas aptvēra vairākus pagastus. Virsaitis vadīja sapulcētos karavīrus kara gaitās, vai nu atsitot ienaidnieka uzbrukumus, vai arī iebrūkot ienaidnieka zemē.

Vocabulary

gids	guide	loceklis	member (pl.)
senlatviešu	(the) ancient Latvians'	radnieks	locekļi
pārvaldīt	administer	bez tam	relative
virsaitis	chief	kalps	besides, moreover
pakļauts	subject, subordinate	kalpone	servant (m.)
liels	great, big	apstrādāt	servant (f.)
saime	household	plašs	work, till
piederēt (pie)	belong (to)		extensive, broad, big

lauks	field	vīrietis	man (pl. vīrieši)
visbeidzot	last of all	novads	region
karš	war	aptvert	include (past tense aptvēra)
biedrs	companion, comrade	vairāki (pl.)	several
pastāvīgs	permanent	pagasts	rural district
aizsargs	guard, defender	vadīt	lead
kā arī	as well as	sapulcēts	assembled
palīgs	assistant, helper	kareivis	soldier
padomdevējs	adviser (padoms 'advice'; devējs 'giver')	gaita	procession, course
		vai nu ...	either ... or else
notikt	happen (past tense notika)	vai arī	
		atsitot	repulsing (from atsit 'repulse')
sapulcējās	gathered, assembled (past tense of sapulcēties)	ienaidnieks	enemy
		iebrūkot	invading (from iebrukt 'invade')
kaujasspējīgs	fit for combat (kauja 'battle'; spējīgs 'able')	zeme	land, country
		uzbrukums	attack
		gadījums	case, event

5 Lauku dzīve

Country life

By the end of this lesson you should know more about:

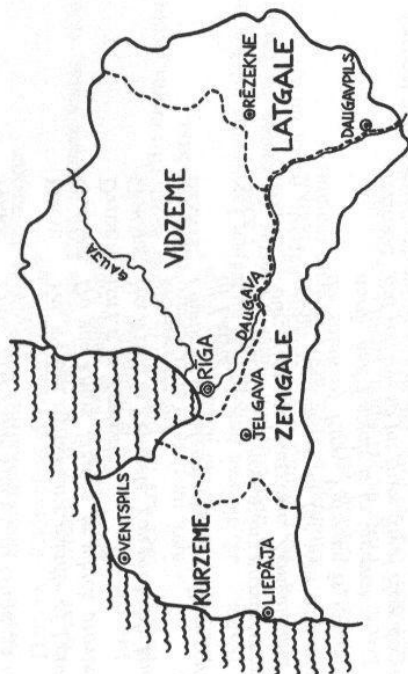
- the geography of Latvia
- impersonal and reflexive verbs
- prepositions with plural nouns
- how to say 'must'
- negation: 'is not'
- clauses without subjects

Dialogue 1

Guests from the country

Later that week, the Kalējs family spend the evening around the dinner-table in their hosts' flat. They have two extra guests: Gunārs and Baiba's son Ivars and his wife Dace, who have arrived from the country

- DACE: Nu, kā jums patīk Latvijā, bērni? Mēs esam tik daudz dzirdējuši par jums un par Austrāliju!
- IMANTS: Man ļoti patīk Latvijā! Bet līdz šim mēs esam paspējuši redzēt tikai Rīgu.
- DACE: Dzīve ir gan citādāka, nekā Austrālijā, vai ne, Dzidra?
- DZIDRA: Jā.
- IVARS: Vai jūs gribētu uz dažām dienām atbraukt pie mums un paskatīties, kā mēs dzīvojam Latvijas laukos?
- DZIDRA: Protams! Vai mēs brauksim, onkul Gunār?
- GUNĀRS: Kāpēc ne? Brauksim visi kopā! Bet vai jūs zināt, kur dzīvo Ivars ar Daci? Paskatīsimies Latvijas kartē!
- IVARS: Lūk, šeit ir mūsu ciems, Gundegas pagastā, pie Madonas.
- DACE: Jā, mēs dzīvojam tieši Latvijas vidū!



- GUNĀRS: Vai tu zini, Dzidra, kurā novadā atrodas Madonas rajons?
- DZIDRA: Vai tas nav Zemgalē?
- GUNĀRS: Nē, tas nav Zemgalē. Tu laikam zini, Imant, kurā novadā tas ir?
- IMANTS: Domāju, ka tas ir Vidzemē, jo Dace teica, ka tas atrodas Latvijas vidū.
- DACE: Jā pareizi! Un cik novadu ir Latvija?
- IMANTS: Četri: Vidzeme, Kurzeme, Zemgale un Latgale.
- BAIBA: Labi! Kurzeme ir Latvijas rietumos, Zemgale ir uz dienvidiem no Rīgas, Vidzeme ir apmēram pa vidu un uz ziemeļiem, un Latgale atrodas austrumos.
- DZIDRA: Bet jūs dzīvojat tik tālu no Rīgas! Kā jūs braucat uz Rīgu?
- IVARS: Mēs braucam ar autobusu, bet mums vajadzētu mašīnu!
- DACE: Well, how do you like (it in) Latvia, children? We've heard so much about you and about Australia!
- IMANTS: I like (it in) Latvia a lot. But so far we've only had time to see Rīga.
- DACE: Life is certainly different to (in) Australia, isn't it, Dzidra?
- DZIDRA: Yes.
- IVARS: Would you like to come to us for a few days and look at what life is like in the Latvian countryside?
- DZIDRA: Of course! Will we go there, uncle Gunārs?
- GUNĀRS: Why not? Let's all go together! But do you know where Ivars and Dace live? Let's have a look at the map of Latvia!

- IVARS: Look, here's our village, in Gundega rural district, near Madona.
 DACE: Yes, we live right in the middle of Latvia!
 GUNĀRS: Do you know, Dzidra, in which province Madona is?
 DZIDRA: Isn't it in Zemgale?
 GUNĀRS: No, it isn't in Zemgale. You probably know, Imants, which province it's in?
 IMANTS: I think it's in Vidzeme, because Dace said it's in the middle of Latvia.
 DACE: Yes, correct! And how many provinces are there in Latvia?
 IMANTS: Four: Vidzeme, Kurzeme, Zemgale and Latgale.
 BAIBA: Good! Kurzeme is in the west of Latvia, Zemgale is to the south of Riga, Vidzeme is around the middle and north, and Latgale is in the east.
 DZIDRA: But you live so far from Riga! How do you travel to Riga?
 IVARS: We travel by bus, but we ought to have a car!

Vocabulary

patikt	please (man patīk 'I like')	likt	look, there it is
loti	much, a lot, very	ciems	village
dzirdēt	hear	vidus	middle
līdz (+ dat.)	until, up to (līdz šim 'up to now')	novads	province
gan	indeed, really, certainly	atrasties	be (located, situated) (pres. tense atrodošas)
	(emphatic particle)	rajons	region, (administrative) district
ciņš	different	jo	because
dzīve	life	pareizs	right, correct
kāpēc	why	rietumi	west
skatīties	look	dienvidi	south
karte	map	ziemeļi	north
		austrumi	east

Language points

Impersonal verbs

Man ļoti patīk Latvija. I like Latvia a lot.

A few very common verbs in Latvian are used in the third-person singular with the logical subject in the dative case. Two of the commonest are **patīkt** 'to please' and **vajadzēt** 'to be necessary'. To express 'liking' we thus say **man patīk**, **tev patīk**, **mums patīk** and so on. The children were asked

Kā jums patīk Latvija? How do you like (it in) Latvia?

The past tense, incidentally, is **patika**:

Man ļoti patika Latvija. I liked Latvia a lot.

Likewise, to express 'needing' we use **vajag**, which is the third-person present-tense form of **vajadzēt** (note the change of **dz** to **g**). For instance,

Mums vajag mašīna. We need a car.

Or, as Ivars said in the subjunctive:

Mums vajadzētu mašīnu. We ought to have a car.

Tam vajag daudz laika. It requires/takes a lot of time.

The past tense is **vajadzēja**:

Tā tev vajadzēja! That serves you right!
(= 'You needed that!')

Similar expressions include:

man bail	I'm afraid
man garšo	I like (the taste of)
man salst	I am cold
man trūkst	I am lacking
man žēl	I'm sorry

Useful words and expressions

Gan is a very common word in Latvian – you find it a few times in the conversation in this lesson. It generally means something like 'really', 'certainly', 'indeed', 'I do', 'he was', and so on:

Dzīve ir gan citādāka, nekā Austrālijā.

Life sure is different to (life in) Australia.

Lūk is another common word used for pointing out things, either seen or heard. It can mean 'look', but it is also rather like *voilà* in French or *BOT* in Russian:

Lūk, šeit ir mūsu ciems.

Look, here's our village.

Līdz šim, literally 'until this' means 'up to now'.

Uz dažām dienām 'for a few days'. (Likewise we say **uz dažām minūtēm** 'for a few minutes', **uz dažiem gadiem** 'for a few years' and so on.)

Prepositions governing nouns in the plural

From the example **uz dažām dienām** quoted above, you will see that the noun case governed by **uz** is the dative plural. This is true of all prepositions: *no matter what case they govern in the singular, they only govern the dative in the plural*. Compare these examples:

Mēs braucam no citas pilsētas. (gen.)

We are travelling from another town.

Mēs braucam no citām pilsētām. (dat.)

We are travelling from other towns.

Mēs braucam uz citu pilsētu. (acc.)

We are travelling to another town.

Mēs braucam uz citām pilsētām. (dat.)

We are travelling to other towns.

Es braucu kopā ar savu draugu. (acc.)

I am travelling (together) with my friend.

Es braucu ar saviem draugiem. (dat.)

I am travelling with my friends.

Dialogue 2

At Dace's and Ivars' farm

The family is now visiting Dace's and Ivars' farm. Their hosts are showing them around

Ivars: Iesim apskatīties mūsu mājas dzīvniekus.

Dzidra: Kādi mājas dzīvnieki jums ir?

Dace: Mums ir divas cūkas, viena gov, astoņas vistas, viens galis, suns Rēksis, kakšis Muris –

Imants: Pie jums te ir brīnīkīgi!

Ivars: Bet nav tik viegli, kā tu domā! Katru rītu mums jāceļas agri, un jāslauc gov, jābaro cūkas un vistas.

Baiba: Un vai tad jums ir liels dārzs?

Ivars: Jā, diezgan liels, jo mēs audzējam kartupeļus, miežus, ar ko mēs barojam cūkas un vistas, un bietes, lai barotu gov. Mums ir arī burkāni, kāposti, gurķi, un arī maza siltumnīca, kurā mēs audzējam tomātus.

Dzidra: Un kas vēl?

Dace: Protams, vēl sīpoli, ķiploki un arī dilles.

Gunārs: Un vai jums tad nekas vairāk no pārtikas nav jāpērk?

Ivars: Kā tad. Mums jāpērk maize, sāls un arī cukurs.

Ivars: Let's go and look at our domestic animals.

Dzidra: What kind of (domestic) animals do you have?

Dace: We have two pigs, one cow, eight hens, one rooster, Rēksis the dog, Muris the cat –

Imants: It's wonderful here at your place!

Ivars: But not as easy as you think! Every morning we have to get up early, and milk the cow, feed the pigs and hens.

Baiba: And do you have a big garden then?

Ivars: Yes, quite big, because we grow potatoes, barley to feed the pigs and hens with, and beet to feed the cow. We also have carrots, cabbages, cucumbers, and a little greenhouse too, where we grow tomatoes.

Dzidra: And what else?

Dace: Of course onions, garlic and dill as well.

Gunārs: So you don't have to buy any more food then?

Ivars: Of course we do. We have to buy bread, salt and sugar too.

Vocabulary

apskatīties	look around	govs (f.)	cow
	(reflexive)	vista	hen
dzīvnieks	animal	galis	cock
cūka	pig	suns	dog
			rooster

kaķis	cat	kāposti (pl.)	cabbage
nav	(it is) not	gurķis	only
viegls	light, (here) easy	mazs	cucumber
kā	as (tik ... kā ...)	siltumnīca	little, small
	'as ... as ...')		hothouse,
katrs	each, every	tomāts	greenhouse
rits	morning	siņols	tomato
celties	get up, rise	ķiploks	onion
slaukt	milk	dilles (pl. only)	garlic
barot	feed	nekas	dill
audzēt	grow, cultivate		nothing (stress on
kartupelis	potato	pārīka	second syllable)
mieži (pl. only)	barley	pirkt	food(stuffs)
ar (+ acc.)	with	kā tad	buy
biete	beet(root)		(idiom) yes, of
lai (+ sub-	(in order) to	sāls	course (we do)
junctive)		cukurs	salt
burkāns	carrot		sugar

Language points

Reflexive verbs

Iesim apskatīties mūsu mājas dzīvniekus.

Let's go and look at our farm (domestic) animals.

Reflexive verbs are those which generally, but in Latvian not always, refer the action back to the subject of the verb. The infinitive ending is extended from -t to -ties; for example, **mazgāt** means 'to wash', but **mazgāties** means 'to wash oneself'; likewise, **mācīt** means 'to teach', whereas **mācīties** means 'to learn' (= teach oneself). Some verbs, like **apskatīties** in the example above, have no obvious reflexive meaning and can even take other objects (mūsu mājas dzīvniekus). **Apskatīt** means 'to examine, view' (a particular thing), whereas **apskatīties** means 'look around' in a more general sense. **Apskatīt** is always transitive (must take an object), whereas **apskatīties**, being reflexive, may be transitive or intransitive. Sometimes the meaning of a reflexive verb is reciprocal, such as **satīkties** 'meet (each other)'.

The endings of the reflexive verbs in the present tense are, for most verbs: -os, -ies, -as, -amies, -aties, -as. All reflexive verbs are

derived from a non-reflexive counterpart: for example **celt** means 'to lift, raise'; **celties** means 'to rise, get up'. Now compare the way these two verbs are conjugated, noting especially the palatalization of l:

es	cel <u>u</u>	cel <u>os</u>
tu	cel	celies
viņš	cel	celas
mēs	celam	celamies
jūs	celat	celaties
viņi	cel	celas

Note that the palatalization in all persons except the second-person singular in the non-reflexive form is mirrored exactly in the reflexive form.

In verbs of the short conjugation where the stem vowel becomes a diphthong in the non-reflexive form, the same happens in the reflexive form, as in **tīkt** 'become' and **tīkties** 'to meet' (note the complete difference in meaning):

es	tīku	tiekos
tu	tiec	tiecies
viņš	tiek	tiekas
mēs	tiekam	tiekamies
jūs	tiekat	tiekaties
viņi	tiek	tiekas

In certain verbs of the mixed conjugation, where the third-person singular of the non-reflexive form ends in -a, the vowel of the ending is lengthened:

	<i>mācīt</i> 'teach'	<i>mācīties</i> 'learn, teach oneself'
es	māc <u>u</u>	māc <u>os</u>
tu	māc	mācies
viņš	māc	mācās
mēs	mācām	mācāmies
jūs	mācāt	mācāties
viņi	māc	mācās

Use of the adverb in subjectless clauses

Pie jums te ir brīnišķīgi!

It's wonderful here at your place!

Bet nav tik viegli, kā tu domā!

But not as easy as you think!

The English pronoun 'it' in the phrase 'it's wonderful' does not refer to anything specific; it is merely a 'dummy subject'. In Latvian it is possible to have a sentence without a subject, but in such cases the adjective referring to the indefinite 'it' will appear in its adverbial form, with -i: **brīnišķīgi, viegli**.

Negation of the verb 'to be'

es	neesmu
tu	neesi
viņš/viņa/tas	nav
mēs	neesam
jūs	neesat
viņi/tie	nav

These forms are quite regular except the third-person form **nav**, which on its own means 'it is not'.

Time expressions with the accusative case

katru rītu every morning
vienu dienu for one day
acumirkli! (just) a moment! (nom. **acumirklis**)

Expressions of a particular moment in time appear in the accusative case, even if the verb that accompanies them is not transitive:

Katru rītu mēs ceļamies.

Every morning we get up.

The debitive mood: 'must'

Latvian has a rather unusual way of expressing the idea of obligation, by means of what we call the *debitive mood* of the verb. It has only one form for each verb, and is not affected by changes

of tense. Earlier in this lesson we met constructions like **man patīk** 'I like', **man vajag** 'I need', where the 'logical subject' appears in the dative case and the 'logical object' in the nominative. The same principle applies to the debitive mood. The debitive mood is formed simply by adding the prefix **jā-** to the *third-person present-tense* form of the verb (and in pronunciation, the stress shifts, as always, to this first syllable). Look at these examples from the text:

Katru rītu mums jāceļas agri, jāslauc govys, un jābaro cūkas un vistas.

Every morning we have to get up early, milk the cow, and feed the pigs and hens.

For emphasis we can add the verb **ir** before the debitive verb, but it is usually left out. However, it must not be left out in the past tense:

Man ir jāslauc govys. I have to milk the cow.

Man bija jāslauc govys. I had to milk the cow.

Some irregular nouns

Here are two quite common irregular nouns that occurred in the dialogue, which are worth noting:

	govs (f.) 'cow'	suns (m.) 'dog'
<i>Singular</i>		
nom.	govs	suns
acc.	govu	suni
gen.	govs	suņa
dat.	govij	sunim
loc.	govī	sunī
<i>Plural</i>		
nom.	govis	suņi
acc.	govis	suņus
gen.	govju	suņu
dat.	govīm	suņiem
loc.	govīs	suņos

Zivs 'fish' declines like **govs**.

Lai

Mēs audzējam bietes, lai barotu govī.

We grow beets in order to feed the cow.

Lai corresponds to the English phrase 'in order to'; it indicates purpose. The verb that follows it will appear in the subjunctive mood (-u).

Mēs slaucam govī, lai dabūtu pienu.

We milk the cow in order to get milk.

Es ceļos agri no rīta, lai ietu uz darbu.

I get up early in the morning to go to work.

Double negation

Two negative elements do not make a positive in Latvian:

Un jums tad *nekas* vairāk *no* pārīkas *nav* jāpērk?
And so you don't have to buy any more (of) food?

Useful negative words to know are:

nekur nowhere

nekas nothing, acc. *neko*, gen. *nekā*

nekad never (all stressed on second syllable)

Double negation is not just an option, it is a necessity. As we have already seen, the negated logical subject appears in the *genitive* case:

Man nav naudas.

I have no money.

Man nav nekā.

I don't have anything.

Vai jums nav mājas?

Do you have no house?

Exercise 1

Supply the missing present-tense endings:

1 Es māc_____ latviešu valodu. (= 'am learning')

2 Es māc_____ latviešu valodu. (= 'am teaching')

3 Tu cel_____ agri no rīta.

4 Viņi apskat_____ māju.

5 Mēs_____ ar saviem draugiem. (tikties 'meet' + ar)

Exercise 2

Join these pairs of sentences together with the conjunction *lai*:

1 Viņa mācās latviešu valodu. Viņa saprot latviešus.

2 Mēs audzējam bietes. Mēs barojam govīs.

3 Es braucu uz Latviju. Es piedalos apspriedē ('take part in a conference'; *piedalīties* 'take part'; *apspriede* 'conference').

4 Mana māte dod man sviestmaizes. Man ir kaut kas, ko ēst.

5 Es steigšos. Es noķeru autobusu. (*steigties* 'hurry'; note *g > dz*, *noķert* 'catch')

Exercise 3

Negate these sentences:

1 Es gribu kaut ko darīt.

2 Vai Jums ir nauda?

3 Man vienmēr patīk celties agri. (*vienmēr* 'always')

4 Kaut kas ir noticis pie mums. (*notikt* 'happen')

5 Man garšo jūsu kartupeļi.

Exercise 4

Put these sentences into the debitive mood:

1 Es braucu ar autobusu.

2 Cilvēkam ir draugi.

3 Mēs steigšamies uz pilsētu.

4 Viņa dzer daudz sulas.

5 Es zvanu savai mātei. (*zvanīt* 'ring up')

Reading passage

Latvia has always been an agricultural country. During the Soviet period, with its heavy emphasis on industrialization, there was a large shift of population to the cities, but much of that population shifted from outside Latvia. Latvia remains a farming country as it has been for centuries. Rural life is a popular theme in the works of some of Latvia's most respected writers. One of these was Jānis Jansudrabiņš (1877-1961). Here is a brief passage from one of his well-loved lyrical accounts of rural life in the Latvia of his youth,

from the novel *Baltā grāmata* ('The White Book', 1921). In its first chapter (*Mūsmājas*, 'Our home'), he describes the farmstead in which he grew up

Lai tiktu lielajos stallos, tad jāiet visai pazīstamo ēku rindai garām, atpakaļ līdz pat saimnieku jaunajai klētij. Blakām saimnieku dārza vārtiņiem bij lieli no deļiem sasīti vārti, no apakšas dubļiem un mēšiem apšēķējuši. Pa vārtiem vispirms tika laidārā, prāvā, četrstūrīnā iežogojumā. No divām pusēm laidaram bij kārsu žogs, tik biezs, ka pat vistai pa to izlīst būtu nācies grūt.¹ Otrās divās pusēs bija stalli vienā laidā.

¹ 'It would have been hard even for a hen to slip through it.'

Vocabulary

tikt	get, reach	apakša	bottom, below-part
stalls	stable (gen. stallu)	dubļi	mud
pazīstams	pl. stalli	mēši	(pl. only)
rinda	familiar	apšēķēt	(pl. only)
garām	row	tika	get dirty
	past, by (preposition or postposition + dat.)	laidars	one got, reached
atpakaļ	back	prāvs	(past tense of tikt)
līdz pat	right up to (past even)	četrstūris	cattle-yard
saimnieks	farmer, owner	iežogojums	fair-sized, largish
klēts (f.)	barn	puse	square (lit. 'four-cornered')
blakām	beside (or blakus, preposition + dat.)	kārts (f.)	enclosure
vārti	gate	žogs	side
(pl. only)		biezs	pole
vārtiņi	wicket-gate	izlīst	fence
	(diminutive of above)	nācies	thick
bij	= bija	grūt	slip through
dēlis	board, plank	(= grūti)	(past participle of nākties) have to be
sasīti	(past passive pl. participle of sasīt)	otrs	hard, difficult
	knocked together	vienā laidā	other
			uninterruptedly, continuously

Revision

It's time for us to review some of the things we have learned so far, and it's also time for the Kalējs family to sit down and write a few letters about their experiences in Latvia so far. So let's help them.

1 Dzidra writes a postcard home to her Latvian-Australian schoolfriend Anna in Adelaide. She isn't sure which endings are correct on some of the words she uses, so she asks her mother to fill them in for her. What does Baiba write?

Rīga, 18.6.1994

Dārgā Anna,

Mēs dzīvo___ šeit Rīgā___ pie man___ tēvo___ un man___ krustmāt___, kas ir ļoti laipn. Vīni ir mums rādī___ daudz viet___ Rīgā___ un tās apkārtnē___ Bet vislabāk___ līdz šim bi___ brauciens uz lauk___ māj___ pie Madon___ Tur mēs redz___ cūk___, vist___ gov___ un daudz vairāk. Vēl daļ___ nedēļ___ mēs būs___ Latvij___ Māte ir nopirk___ daudz liet___ piemēr___ man viņa nopirka aproc___ Visu labu novēlē___
Dzidra.

2 To his schoolfriend, Anna's brother Roberts, Imants tells a slightly different story of his impressions of Latvia on his postcard. He is more cautious; he writes out a draft version of his postcard in English, which his father helps him to write out correctly in Latvian. What does his father tell him to write?

Rīga, 18.6.1994

Dear Roberts (= Sveiks, Robert!)

We arrived here in Latvia five days ago by aeroplane. We're staying with Uncle Gunārs and Aunt Aija, who have been showing us around Riga. Dad and Uncle Gunārs are interested in old castles, and they took us to visit a famous castle outside Riga. We've also been visiting a farm that belongs to our cousins Ivars and Dace. All the best,

Imants

3 Baiba writes home to her old friend Ināra in Adelaide. Translate what she writes:

Rīgā, 18.6.1994

Dārgā Ināra!

Mēs ar Gunāru un bērniem esam šeit Rīgā jau piekto dienu. Tikai dažu nedēļu laikā ir tik daudz ko redzēt un apmeklēt šeit Latvijā! Un tik daudz kas ir mainījies kopš tā, kad mēs dzīvojām šajā zemē savā jaunībā! Tomēr vēl pastāv daudz ēku un ielu, ko es vēl tagad pazīnu. Visi ir tik laipni pret mums, un viss ir tik interesants! Ivars un viņa sieva Dace, ar ko es nekad nebiju satikusies, vakar rādīja savu māju laukos, no kurienes mūsu Rīgas radnieki, viņu vecāki, saņem svaigas pārtikas. Ceru tikai, ka mums pietiks laiks redzēt visu, ko esam nodomājuši.

Kā es solīju, es tev jau nopirku krelles no Rīgas!

Ar sirsnīgiem sveicieniem, Baiba

4 But Gunārs is not writing home to Australia at all. Instead he sits down to write a business letter. How would you help him to write it in Latvian?

Write to the manager of the Aizkraukle Wood Processing Company.

Explain that you own a small import-export business in Australia.

You would like to expand its markets, especially in Latvia, as you have family connections here, know the country well and are currently visiting it for four weeks.

Ask if it would be possible to arrange a meeting to discuss co-operation.

Give your temporary address: Jūrmalas gatve 67 - 17, LV 1067 Rīga.

Some extra vocabulary to help you will be found in the English-Latvian glossary at the end of the book.

6 Dzimšanas diena

A birthday

By the end of this lesson you should know more about:

- dates, months, days of the week and times of the day
- verb infinitive forms

Dialogue 1



Dzidra has a birthday

At breakfast the next day, Baiba has an important announcement to make

BAIBA: Šodien ir ģeizā diena – vai jūs zināt kāpēc?

IMANTS: Jā, Dzidrai ir dzimšanas diena!

BAIBA: Daudz laimes tev, Dzidra!

GUNĀRS: Viņai jau ir – cik tev gadu ir tagad?

DZIDRA: Vienpadsmit.

JĀNIS: Nu, šodien nav tikai tava dzimšanas diena, bet arī svētdiena – brīva diena mums visiem. Ko tu visvairāk gribētu darīt savā dzimšanas dienā?

DZIDRA: Ēsim uz cirku, vai uz brīvdabas muzeju!

AJA: Par cirku es neko nezinu, bet uz brīvdabas muzeju varam aizbraukt, ar autobusu. Tas nav nemaz tik tālu.

(From now on, no translations of the dialogues will be given.)

Vocabulary

dzimšana
laime

birth (dzimšanas diena 'birthday')
happiness (daudz laimes 'many happy returns')

jau	already	cirks	circus
gads	year	brīvdabas	open-air
svētdiena	Sunday	muzejs	museum
brīvs	free	nemaz	not at all

Language points

Dates

When Latvians write dates in figures they appear in the order 'day-month-year': '18.6.1994'. A more usual Latvian way to write the same date, say, in a letter, would be 1994.g. 18. jūnijs, which, expressed in words, is **tūkstoš devīpīsimt deviņdesmit ceturā gada astoņpadsmitais jūnijs**. (Note that the year appears in the genitive.)

Let's now look at the elements in the construction more closely. We already know (from lesson 3) the basic elements of the Latvian number system. Now we shall study how to combine these elements. **Tūkstošis** (pl. **tūkstoši**) means 'thousand', but the singular form is generally used only when 'thousand' is thought of as a noun (*ciņā krita tūkstošis* 'a thousand fell in battle'); otherwise the plural form is used. **Simt(s)** means 'hundred' (pl. **simti**). Compound hundreds may either have the first element uninflected as part of the compound word, or be written and enunciated separately: **četrīsimt** or **četri simti** 'four hundred'.

The variation is usually a matter of emphasis. As we have already seen, compounds of the tens (**-desmit**) are written and pronounced as one word: **četrdesmit** '40', **piecdesmit** '50' and so on.

All numbers ending in **-desmit** or **-padsmit**, the 'teens' and the 'tens' in other words, as well as round hundreds and thousands, govern the *genitive plural* of the noun that follows them. So we say **piecpadsmit gadu** '15 years' but **divdesmit pieci gadi** '25 years'. Latvians do not always observe this rule, however.

Ordinal numbers, as we already know, take the same endings as definite adjectives, and are declined like them:

Es jau lasīju piekto lekciju. I have already read lesson 5.

And we just read that today Dzidra is celebrating

savu vienpadsmito dzimšanas dienu
her eleventh birthday

The year element in the date is expressed by an ordinal number, which is indicated after figures by the letter **g** and a full stop: **1994. g.** (= **gads** 'year').

Months

The names of the months are all masculine. Capitals are not used:

janvāris	jūlijs
februāris	augusts
martis	septembris
aprīlis	oktobris
maijs	novembris
jūnijs	decembris

Days of the week

The days of the week are all feminine. Capitals are not used:

pirm diena	Monday
otr diena	Tuesday
treš diena	Wednesday
cetur diena	Thursday
pie ktdiena	Friday
se stidiena	Saturday
svē tdiena	Sunday

'On Monday' and so forth is expressed by dropping the final **-a**:

Svētdien mums ir brīva diena.

On Sunday we have a free day.

Parts and times of the day

rīts	morning
pus diena	noon (pus dienas 'lunch, midday meal')
pē cpusdiena	afternoon
vak ars	evening
nak ts (f.)	night
pus nakts (f.)	midnight
pus vienos	half past twelve
pus trijos	half past two
	and so on

Dialogue 2

The weather

On the way back from the open-air museum, the family suddenly gets caught in the rain

DZIDRA: Brrr! Man salst!

BAIBA: Jā! Laiks ir pēkšņi mainījies. Saule ir pazudusi, vējš ir sacēlies un virsū nāk tumši mākoņi.

GUNĀRS: Jau sāk līt! Vai tev ir lietussargs, Aija?

AJA: Jā, ir, bet vējš ir tik stiprs, ka būs grūti to atvērt. Labāk, skriesim ātrāk uz autobusa pieturu!

DZIDRA: Un šķiet, ka tagad lietus līs līdz vakaram.

(*In the shelter of the bus stop*)

GUNĀRS: Ceru, ka pērkons un negaiss neilgs visu vakaru.

Paskatīsimies laika prognozi avīzē!

JĀNIS: Cerēsim, ka rīt būs atkal labs laiks.

Vocabulary

laiks	weather	lietussargs	umbrella
salt	freeze, be cold	vējš	wind
	(man salst 'I am cold')	stiprs	strong
pēkšņs	sudden	atvērt	open
mainīties	change	labāk	(we'd) better
pazust	disappear	skriet	run
pacelties	spring up (of wind)	pietura	stop (autobusa pietura 'bus-stop')
nākt virsū	come over	šķīst	seem
tumšs	dark	cerēt	hope
mākonis	cloud	pērkons	thunder
sākt	begin, start	negaiss	storm
līt	rain, precipitate	ilgt	last, continue
lietus	rain (līst lietus 'it is raining')	prognoze	forecast
		avīze	newspaper

Language points

Verbs: the present and past tenses and the infinitive

Many of the new verbs that appear in this dialogue belong to what we have already referred to as the *short conjugation*; characteristically they lack a vowel in the final syllable of the infinitive. This conjugation is quite regular and predictable; what is to some extent unpredictable is the way that some vowels and some consonants vary between the infinitive and the present- and past-tense forms. As many of these verbs are very common, it is worthwhile learning how they behave. Let us examine a few of the short conjugations in the present and past tenses, and note how they differ from the infinitive:

salt 'freeze, be cold'

Usually only the third-person form is used in practice: present-tense **salst**, past tense **sala**.

pazust 'disappear' (note the difference in vowel length)

es	pazūdu	pazudu
tu	pazūdi	pazudi
viņš	pazūd	pazuda
mēs	pazūdam	pazudām
jūs	pazūdat	pazudāt
viņi	pazūd	pazuda

(past participle: **pazudis, pazudusi**)

šķīst 'appear, seem' (note the change of vowel)

es	šķietu	šķitu
tu	šķiet	šķiti
viņš	šķiet	šķita
mēs	šķietam	šķitām
jūs	šķietat	šķitāt
viņi	šķiet	šķita

(past participle: **šķitis, šķitusi**)

(In practice this verb is hardly used in any person other than the third.)

sākt 'begin'

es	sāku	sāku
tu	sāc	sāki

viņš sāk
mēs sākam
jūs sākat
viņi sāk

sāka
sākām
sākat
sāka

(Similar to **sākt** are **augt** 'grow', **bēgt** 'flee', **degt** 'burn', **nest** 'carry', **cept** 'bake'.)

līt 'rain, precipitate' (in practice only third-person form used):
present tense **līst**, past tense **līja** (past participle: **lījis, lījusi**)

atvērt 'open' (note changes in vowel length)

es atveru
tu atver
viņš atver
mēs atveram
jūs atverat
viņi atver

atvēru
atvēri
atvēra
atvērām
atvērāt
atvēra

(past participle: **atvēris, atvērusi**)

skriet 'run' (an anomalous verb; note use of **-n-**)

es skrienu/skreju
tu skrien/skrej
viņš skrien
mēs skrienam/skrejam
jūs skrienat/skrejat
viņi skrien

skrēju
skrēji
skrēja
skrējām
skrējāt
skrēja

(past participle: **skrējis, skrējusi**)

ilgt 'last, continue' (compare with **līt** and **salt**)

es ilgstu
tu ilgsti
viņš ilgst
mēs ilgstam
jūs ilgstat
viņi ilgst

ilgu
ilgi
ilga
ilgām
ilgāt
ilga

(past participle: **ildzis, ilgusi**)

You will see from this that, apart from **skriet**, none of the verbs is actually irregular within its own conjugations; you can always predict the other forms if you know just one form, and there is no need therefore to learn these conjugations by heart.

Exercise 1

Answer these questions about yourself. Begin each answer with the word **Pulksten** ('o'clock'):

- 1 Cikos 'at what times' jūs ēdat brokastis?
- 2 Cikos jūs ejat uz darbu/skolu? ('work/school')
- 3 Cikos jūs ēdat pusdienas?
- 4 Cikos jūs nākat mājās no darba/skolas?
- 5 Cikos jūs ejat gulēt?

Exercise 2

Answer these questions about yourself and your relatives:

- 1 Cik gadu jums ir?
- 2 Cik gadu ir jūsu mātei?
- 3 Cik gadu ir jūsu tēvam?
- 4 Vai jums ir māsa ('sister')? Cik viņai ir gadu?
- 5 Vai jums ir brālis? Cik viņam ir gadu?
- 6 Vai jums ir bērni? Cik viņiem ir gadu?

Exercise 3

Translate into Latvian:

- 1 My sister is cold.
- 2 The work lasted all day.
- 3 The three children were running after their mother.
- 4 It was already raining when I opened my umbrella.
- 5 At four o'clock it began to rain. (Don't translate 'it'.)
- 6 It seems to me that she has disappeared.

Language in action

A weather forecast

Here is a typical weather forecast for a day in May, early summer in Latvia. See if you understand the text with the help of the vocabulary provided.

Laiks Latvijā

Latvijā – mākoņains laiks, brīžiem skaidrosies. Teritorijas lielākajā daļā neliels īslaicīgs lietus, atsevišķos rajonos iespējams pērkona negaiss. Rietumu, ziemeļrietumu vējš 4 – 8 m/s. (= metri sekundē). Gaisa temperatūra šodien 14...19 grādi, 17. maija naktī 2...7 grādi.

Rīgā – mākoņains laiks, brīžiem skaidrosies, neliels īslaicīgs lietus. Rietumu, ziemeļrietumu vējš 4 – 8 m/s. Gaisa temperatūra šodien 16...18 grādi, 17. maija naktī 4...6 grādi.

Medicīniskais laika tips šodien otrs – labvēlīgs.

Klimatiskie dati Rīgā 16. maijā:

Vidējā diennakts temperatūra 11,0 (vienpadsmit komats nulle) grādi

Absolūtais gaisa temperatūras maksimums 29,1 (divdesmit deviņi komats viens) grādi (1975)

Absolūtais gaisa temperatūras minimums –3,9 (mīnus trīs komats deviņi) grādi (1965)

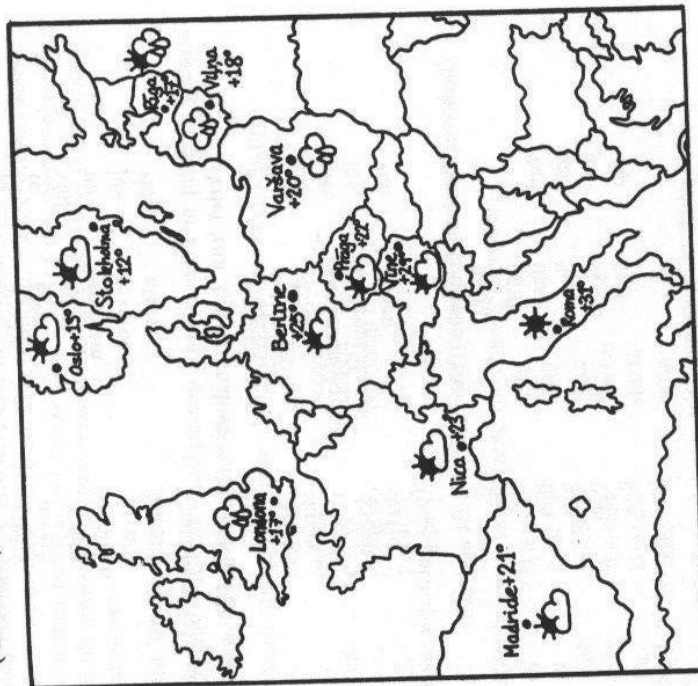
Vocabulary

mākoņains brīžiem	cloudy at times, occasion- ally (dat. pl. of brīdis)	gaiss temperatūra nakts (f.) medicīniskais	air temperature night (pl. nakts) medical (health- related)
skaidrosies	will clear up (future tense of skaidroties)	tips	type (otrais 'type 2')
teritorija	territory	labvēlīgs	favourable
lielākais	most, greater	klimatiskais	climatic
daļa	part	dati	data
neliels	(here) slight, light	vidējs	average, mean
īslaicīgs	brief	diennakts	day (24-hour period)
atsevišķs	certain, separate, particular	absolūts	absolute
iespējams	possible	maksimums	maximum
metrs	metre	minimums	minimum
sekunde	second	virziens	direction

Note the use of the comma (**komats**) instead of decimal points.

Questions

- 1 Kāds būs temperatūras maksimums (= visaugstākā temperatūra) Latvijā 16.maijā?
- 2 Kāds vējš šodien ir?
- 3 Vai mākoņi būs visu dienu?
- 4 Vai būs lietus?
- 5 Kādā veidā ('In what way') Rīgas laiks atšķiras ('differs') no Latvijas laika vispār ('generally')?
- 6 Kad bija Rīgas absolūtais gaisa temperatūras maksimums? ('in words')



Looking at the weather map of Europe and the cities listed, you will see that all the place-names have feminine endings. This is an inflexible rule in Latvian: all place-names are feminine and must be spelt in a form indicating feminine gender. This applies to all places in all countries, unless the name *as pronounced* (rather than

as spelt, for all names are respelled according to Latvian spelling rules) ends in **-u** or **-o** (**Turku, Oslo, Bordo** = 'Bordeaux'). Nevertheless you can probably recognize most of the names of European cities given here, or identify them from the map. (**Minhene**, by the way, is what we know as Munich.)

Now write out in words the temperature indicated for the following cities:

- 1 Prague
- 2 London
- 3 Nice
- 4 Vienna
- 5 Vilnius
- 6 Warsaw

Reading passage

Here is a simple poem (untitled) by the Latvian poetess Ilze Kalnāre (1918-1968). Using the vocabulary below you should have little trouble understanding it. The word order in poetry can be very flexible. Pay especial attention to the past-tense forms of verbs, given in the infinitive form in the vocabulary

Mīla biju tev un maiga,
Rausu asaru no vaiga.
Kopā abi druvi gājām
Smilšu aplīpušām kājām.
Liksmā nebij katra diena,
Bet es necietu to viena;
Tu uz pleca roku liki,
Tu man bēdās tuvāk tiki.
Smagu nastu nesām abi,
Jūtām: ai, cik dzīvot labi –
Ieplēst purvā jaunu lauku,
Dzirdēt druvi šalku jauku;
Brist pa kupenām un rasu,
Paciest lietu, vēju asu.
– Mīla biju tev un maiga,
Galvu pieglaudu pie vaiga.
Kopā abi druvi plāvām,
Darbam sevi saliekt lāvām.
Zinājām: tā mūža alga

Just – no sviedriem valga,
Redzēt – sēta kalnā celta,
Kuru mierīgs vakars zelta.

Vocabulary

mīļš	dear, beloved	brist	wade
maigs	gentle, tender	kupena	snow-drift
raust	rake (here: 'remove')	rasa	dew
asara	tear	paciest	endure
vaigs	cheek	ass	sharp, keen
abi	both	galva	head
druva	cornfield	pieglaust	press
smiltis	sand	plaut	reap, mow
aplīpt	stick, cling	darbs	work
kāja	foot, leg	sevi	self, selves
liksmis	joyful	saliekt	bend, stoop
ciet	suffer	ļaut	allow, let
viens	alone	mūžs	life(time)
plecs	shoulder	alga	wages, due
roka	hand	sviedri (pl.)	sweat
likt	put, place	valgs	moist, damp
bēdas (pl.)	grief, sorrow	sēta	fence, courtyard
tuvāk	closer, nearer	kalns	hill
smags	heavy	celts	built (cell = 'build')
nasta	burden, load	kuru	whose
just	feel	mierīgs	quiet, peaceful
ieplēst	tear (into)	vakars	evening
purvs	bog, marsh	zelta	golden (zelts = 'gold')
šalkas	rustle		

7 Līgo svētki

Midsummer celebrations

By the end of this lesson you should know more about:

- verbal prefixes
- reflexive verbs
- subjectless clauses
- verb participles
- abstract nouns

Dialogue 1

A Midsummer celebration

It is 23 June, the eve of a very special day in the Latvian calendar – the Līgo festival on St John's Day (Jāņi) or Midsummer. Jānis and Gunārs are starting to build a bonfire for the celebrations, while the children look on

IMANTS: Onkul, ko mēs darīsim pie ugunsкура?

GUNĀRS: Ēdīsim, dzersim un protams dziedāsim 'līgo' dziesmas.

Cik Jāņu dziesmu tu zini, Imant?

IMANTS: Trīs vai četras, ko es iemācījos skolā.

GUNĀRS: Labi! Pie ugunsкура mēs dziedāsim visu nakti, kamēr uzlēks saule. Jāņu rītā jāsaģaida saullektu!

DZIDRA: Vai arī mēs varam līgot līdz rītam?

BAIBA: Nē, es nedomāju, ka jūs bērni visu nakti būsiēt ārā pie ugunsкура. Bet tu, Jāni, esi īsts Jānis, tev jāsaģaida Jāņu rīt!

JĀNIS: Parasti es nogurstu daudz agrāk! Protams, mēs šoreiz riktīgi svinēsim Jāņus.

Vocabulary

ugunskurs	bonfire (uguns (f.) 'fire')	sagaidīt	await, welcome, expect
dziedāt	sing	saullekti	sunrise (uzlēkt 'rise')
līgo (dziesma)	song sung at (indeclinable)	līgot	sing līgo songs, celebrate līgo
	Midsummer, named after its characteristic	īsts	genuine, true, real
	refrain	riktīgi	properly
dziesma	song	svinēt	celebrate
iemācīties	learn		

Language points

Verbal prefixes

Many verbs in Latvian can have their meanings altered by the addition of a prefix. These prefixes are in some cases identical to prepositions, and in a general sense carry the same meanings as they do. Basically, all the prefixes contain a sense of a 'direction', but their meaning can only sometimes be guessed from the prefix. Below is a complete list of the prefixes in use (with prepositional equivalents in parentheses) followed by some examples. Prefixed verbs are very common in Latvian.

aiz-	(aiz 'behind')	aiziet	leave	< iet	go
ap-	(ap 'about')	aprēķināt	calculate	< rēķināt	count
at-	back	atdot	give back	< dot	give
ie-	(iekš 'in')	iemācīt	teach	< mācīt	instruct
iz-	out	izmēģināt	try out	< mēģināt	try
no-	(no 'off/from')	noraksfīt	write off	< raksfīt	write
pa-	(pa 'along/by')	pajautāt	enquire	< jautāt	ask
pār-	(pār 'over')	pārnēst	transfer	< nest	carry
pie-	(pie 'at/to')	piezvanīt	ring up	< zvanīt	ring
sa-	together	samierināt	reconcile	< mierināt	console
uz-	(uz 'on')	uzlikt	put on	< likt	put

Past tense of reflexive verbs

Asked how many līgo songs he knew, Imants said:

Trīs vai četras, ko es iemācījos skolā.

Three or four that I learned at school.

Iemācījos 'I learned' (see **iemācīt** in the list above) is the past tense (first-person singular) of **iemācīties** 'learn', a reflexive verb, that the endings are much the same, but, as with the active mood of most 'regular' verbs, an extra syllable is added, consisting of the long vowel of the infinitive ending + **-j-**:

	Present	Past
es	iemācos	iemācījos
tu	iemācies	iemācījies
viņš/viņa	iemācās	iemācījās
mēs	iemācāmies	iemācījāmies
jūs	iemācāties	iemācījāties
viņi/viņas	iemācās	iemācījās

Subjectless clauses

Jāņu rītā jāsaģaida saullēktu.

On Midsummer morning one has to welcome the sunrise.

When Gunārs said **jāsaģaida saullēktu** he was not actually referring to any specific person; people in general welcome the sunrise. In Latvian we can omit the subject of a third-person verb if we wish to be vague about who performs the action: what 'one' does, 'they' do, 'people' do. We can say:

Jāņu naktī līgo līdz rītam.

On Midsummer night people sing **līgo** songs until morning.

Pie ugunsкура ēd, dzer un protams dzied.

By the bonfire they eat, drink and of course sing.

Dialogue 2

Latvian Midsummer traditions

Jānis and Gunārs are preparing for the evening's celebrations and talking about the Latvian traditions associated with Jāņi

JĀNIS: Gunār, ko dzersim šonakt?

GUNĀRS: Dzersim alu un varbūt arī šnabi. Un ēdīsim sieru. Dodoties svinēt Jāņus, līdz jāņem pāris pudeļu alus.

JĀNIS: Jā, un no savas jaunības atceros daudz citu paražu, kas saistītas ar Jāņiem. Piemēram, ja kādam izdodas Jāņu naktī atrast papardes ziedu, tas nozīmē, ka atradējs iegūs laimi un mīlestību.

GUNĀRS: Tautas ticējumi arī iesaka negulēt Jāņu naktī, lai ieman-totu mundrumu un veselību.

GUNĀRS: Jā, pēc senās baltu ciltis ticējuma. Nedrīkst aizmirst, ka Jāņi taču ir ļoti veci svētki, no senbaltu laikiem.

IMANTS: Bet vēl šodien tā turpinās. Man liekas, ka cilvēki labprāt svin Jāņus lai satiktos ar veciem draugiem.

GUNĀRS: Ne tikai tādēļ, Imant. Vai arī jūs svinat Jāņus Austrālijā?

IMANTS: Jā, katru gadu, bet citādi, jo tur ir protams pašlaik ziema.

GUNĀRS: Piemēram, pie mums parasti nav vainagu.

Redzi, Jāņi ir pamatā vasaras saulgriežu svētki, kas saistīti ar baltu seno auglības kultu. Jāņu vainagi ir svētku rituāla būtiska daļa, vēl mūsdienās.

Vocabulary

šonakt	tonight	atrodi, atrod:
alus (m.)	beer	past atradu
šnabis	vodka	fern
doties (refl.)	set off	flower
līdz (i)	(along) with you/one	mean, signify
pudele	bottle	that
jaunība	youth	finder
atcerēties	remember	get
	(reflexive)	love
cīts	other	belief, superstition
paraža	custom	recommend, urge
saistīts	bound, connected	gain, win
piemērs	example	liveliness
	(piemēram 'for example')	health
kāds	someone	ieteikt = iesākt
izdoties (+ dat.)	manage, succeed	lēkt
atrast	find (pres. atrodu, baltu	pēc
		(also) according to
		Baltic

cilts (l.)	tribe	pamatā	basically (pamats)
tradīcija	tradition		base
pagāns	pagan	saulgrieži	solstice
turpināt	continue	auglība	fertility
likties	seem, appear	kults	cult
	(pres. liekas)	vainags	garland, wreath
satīkties	meet	būris	essential
(refl.; + ar)		mūsdienās	today, nowadays

Language points

The present active participle -ot

Dodoties svinēt Jāpus, ...
(When) going off to celebrate Midsummer, ...

The suffix '-ing' in English, the present active participle, has more than one equivalent in Latvian. In constructions like the one above, meaning 'when going', the suffix **-ot** is added to the third-person present-tense form of the verb. If the verb is reflexive, as it is here (**doties** 'set off'), the suffix **-ot** precedes the reflexive ending **-ies**. Some more examples:

Doļot bērniem padomus, viņa sāka lai viņi neiet pie ugunsкура.
Giving the children advice, she urged them not to go near the fire.

Lēcot pār ugunsкуру, viņa apdedzināja roku.
Jumping over the bonfire, she burned her hand. (**apdedzināt** 'burn, scorch')

The word **beidzot** 'finally' is actually the present participle of the verb **beigt** 'end':

Beidzot atnāca visa ģimene.
Finally the whole family arrived.

Masculine nouns ending in -us

A small group of masculine nouns ends in **-us** in the nominative, including **alus** 'beer', which we met here. They include **medus** 'honey', **lietus** 'rain', **ledus** 'ice', **tirgus** 'market' and a few others. This is how they are declined:

	<i>Singular</i>
nom.	alus
acc.	alu
gen.	alus
loc.	alū
dat.	alum

(The plural forms of most of these nouns are irrelevant; they tend to have 'uncountable' meanings.)

The past passive participle

Talking about his childhood memories of Midsummer, Jānis said:

atceros daudz citu tradīciju, kas saistītas ar Jāņiem.

I remember many other traditions that are associated with Midsummer.

(He could also have said **kas ir saistītas**, but often the verb **ir** is omitted in dependent clauses.)

Saistītas 'associated' is a *past passive participle*, the equivalent of '-ed' in English. To form it, simply add the adjectival endings to the infinitive of the verb, remembering to make it agree in number and case with the noun to which it refers, like any other adjective. Here **saistītas** refers to **tradīcijas** 'traditions', and thus it carries the feminine plural ending.

Darbs ir paveikts. The work is done (m. sg.).

Vilcieni ir atcelti. The trains are cancelled (m. pl.).

(All the verbs in the examples given here have prefixes. But this is only a tendency, not a rule.)

Agent nouns

Jānis went on to say:

tas nozīmētu, ka atradējs iegūs laimi un mīlestību.
that would mean that the finder will have happiness and love.

The suffix **-ējs** added to the *past-tense stem* of a verb turns it into an agent noun, signifying the doer of the action. (If the doer is clearly feminine, the ending is **-ēja**.) Other examples:

gājējs	pedestrian	gāja	< iet	go
pārdevējs	salesman	pārdeva	< pārdot	sell

kalējs smith < kalt forge
(Kalējs is the name of the family in our narrative.)

Abstract nouns

Another very common and useful suffix we have met in this lesson is the suffix **-ība**, which changes adjectives (and some other words) into abstract nouns. We have just encountered these:

jauība youth < jauns young
veselība health < vesels healthy
mīlestība love < mīļš dear

Subjunctive form of reflexive verbs

Imants remarked about the Midsummer celebrations that

Man liekas, ka cilvēki labprāt svin Jāņus, lai satiktos ar veciem draugiem.

It seems to me that people probably celebrate Midsummer to meet (with) old friends.

Satīktos is the subjunctive form of the reflexive verb **satikties** 'meet'. The **-u** which is the characteristic ending of the subjunctive/conditional form changes into **-os** when the verb is reflexive, in place of the **-ies** of the reflexive active verb. As with other subjunctive forms, it is the same for all persons, singular and plural, so, for example, the verb **iemācīties** (page 86 above) would be **iemācītos** throughout the subjunctive conjugation.

Exercise 1

Answer these questions about the dialogues:

- 1 Ko ģimene darīs pie ugunsкура?
- 2 Vai arī bērni drīkst līgot līdz rītam?
- 3 Cik Līgo dziesmu Imants zina?
- 4 Pēc tautas ticējumiem, ko nedrīkst darīt, un kas jādara, Jāņus sagaidot?
- 5 Un ja kāds atrastu papardes ziedu, ko tas nozīmētu?

Exercise 2

Translate into Latvian:

- 1 Imants remembers eight **līgo** songs that he learned at school.
- 2 But he can't manage to remember all the words.
- 3 Dzidra would like to stay by the bonfire all night.
- 4 At Midsummer the Latvians sing songs that are connected with the summer solstice.
- 5 People like to celebrate Midsummer so as to meet their friends.
- 6 While drinking beer, we all sang the old **līgo** songs.
- 7 While eating cheese, Baiba and Jānis remembered the Midsummers of their youth.

Exercise 3

The passage below retells the dialogues above, using different tenses and persons. Insert the appropriate endings (remembering that in indirect, reported speech, Latvian retains the tense used in the original direct speech).

Imants Gunāram jautāja, ko viņi dar___ pie Jāņu ugunskur___.
Gunārs viņam atbildeja, ka viņi ēd___, dzer___ un dzied___ līgo dziesmas. Dzidra grib___ līgot līdz rīt___, bet viņas māte sac___, ka bērni ne___ visu nakti pie ugunskur___.
Gunārs sac___, ka Jāņus sagaidot, dzer___ alu___ un ēd___ sier___.
Jānis atcer___ daudz paraž___, kas saistīt___ ar Jāņ___.
Piemēram cilvēki ne___ Jāņ___ nakt___, lai iemantot___ veselīb___.
Jānis domā___, ka cilvēki labprāt svin___ Jāņus lai satikt___ ar jaun___ draug___ un jaun___ draudzen___.

Reading passage

Dainas

A uniquely Latvian form of folk poetry is the **daina**, a simple verse form, usually of four lines, of which the long Latvian oral tradition has handed down thousands of examples. The Latvian folklorist Krišjānis Barons (1835–1923) devoted much of his life to collecting and publishing these **dainas**. Here are a few of them that are specifically associated with Midsummer and are recited and known

by Latvians even today. In these folk poems we find many examples of the various diminutive forms of nouns

Jāņu nakti apģērbos –
 Puse balta, puse melna.
 Lai aug mani telēniņi –
 Puse balti, puse melni.
 Nāc pretīm, kaimeņiņa,
 Samīsim zāļtēm.
 Tēv ābolītis, man dadzītis,
 Nāc tu pate piedevām.
 Es nevedu kumeliņu
 Jāņu nakti pieguļā.
 Tad staigāja ļaunie gari,
 Tad burviši, raganīnas.
 Es nopirku Jāņu nakti
 Rudzu puķu vainadziņu.
 Gribēdama tīru vīnu,
 Tīru rudzu maizi ēst.

Vocabulary

apģērbties	dress (oneself)	dadzis, dim.	burdock
puse	half	dadzītis	
melns	black	piedevām	as well, into the bargain
augt	grow	vest (pres. vedu)	lead, guide
telš, dim. telēniņš	calf	kumelš, dim. kumeliņš	colt, foal
nāc	imperative sg. of nākt 'come'	pieguļa	night-watch (of grazing horses)
pretī(m)	towards (me)	staigāt	walk, wander
kaimiņš, f. dim.	neighbour (here: 'neighbour-girl')	ļaus	evil
kaimēniņa		gars	spirit
samīt	trample, tread down	burvis, dim. burvītis	wizard, sorcerer
zāle, dim. zālīte	grass	ragana, dim. raganīņa	witch
ābolītis	clover (usually ābolīšs)		

rudzi	rye	gribēdama (t.)	wanting
puķe	flower	tīrs	pure
vainags, dim. vainadziņš	garland	vīns	wine

8 Brauciens ar autobusu

A bus journey

By the end of this lesson you should know more about:

- past participles of verbs
- verbs that change their stems
- how to use place-names
- verb negation
- Latvian money

Dialogue 1

Planning a bus trip

The Kalējs family decides to travel around Latvia a little on their own, as their hosts have to stay in Riga to work. They decide to travel across the country to Aglona, in the eastern province of Latgale

BAIBA: Gunār, vai ir iespējams ar sabiedrisko transportu nokļūt Aglonā?

GUNĀRS: Protams ka var, tikai ar vilcienu uz turieni nevar nokļūt. Tiešās dzelzceļa satiksmes ar Aglonu nav. Tāpēc var braukt tikai ar autobusu.

BAIBA: Cik tālu tā ir no Rīgas?

GUNĀRS: Apmēram 250 km. (divsimt piecdesmit kilometru). Atceros, ka pagājušo gadu, kad mēs braucām uz Aglonu, bija diezgan grūts brauciens, jo Preiļos vajadzēja pārsēties citā autobusā.

BAIBA: Vai jums ir autobusu saraksts?

GUNĀRS: Dīemžēl saraksta pie mums nav. Jādodas uz Rīgas autoostas uzziņu biroju. Bet brauciens ar autobusu ir

tomēr interesants pasākums, jo tāda veidā var redzēt daudz ko no skaistās Latvijas.

BAIBA: Labi! Tad dosimies uz autoostu!

Vocabulary

sabiedrīks	public	atcerēties	remember
transports	transport	pārsēties	change (bus, train, etc.)
nokļūt	get, reach (+ loc. case of place)	saraksts	list, timetable
vilciens	train	autoosta	bus/coach station;
turine	there (uz turieni (acc.) 'to there')	uzziņa	osta 'port' information
tiešs	direct	birojs	bureau, office
dzelzceļš	railway (dzelzs (f.) 'iron'; ceļš 'road')	tomēr	still, yet, nevertheless
satiksme	communication, traffic	interesants	interesting
apmēram	about, approximately	pasākums	activity
		daudz kas	plenty

Language points

Definite forms of past participles and their declensions

Gunārs used the phrase **pagājušo gadu** 'last year'; **pagājušo** is the accusative case of the definite form of the participle **pagājis** 'past'. You will remember that the plural form of **pagājis** is **pagājuši**. We take the **-uš-** of this ending as the basis for the definite form of the participle:

nom.	pagājušais (m.),	pagājušā (f.)
acc.	pagājušo (m./f.)	
gen.	pagājušā (m.),	pagājušās (f.)
dat.	pagājušajam (m.),	pagājušajai (f.)
loc.	pagājušajā (m./f.)	

Another term meaning 'last year' is **pērn**.

Verbs with short past-tense forms and change of consonant

Gunārs went on to say:

mēs braucām uz Aglonu we travelled to Aglona

We have already seen that there is a small group of verbs which changes the final consonant of the infinitive stem in the present tense, of which one example is **braukt**: **es braucu, tu brauc** and so on. These are all verbs of the *short conjugation*. Such verbs also form their past tenses differently from the majority of verbs. Verbs of the long and the mixed conjugation add a syllable before the personal endings in the past tense (the long vowel of the infinitive ending + **j**: **-āj-, -ēj-, -īj-, -oj-, -ūj-**), but this class of verbs has a simpler, monosyllabic type of ending.

Compare the present and imperfect tenses of **braukt**:

	Present	Imperfect
es	braucu	braucu
tu	brauc	brauci
viņš	brauc	brauca
mēs	braucam	braucām
jūs	braucat	braucāt
viņi	brauc	brauca

You will see that the differences between the tenses are quite minimal. We have already seen that the change of consonant is from **k** to **c** and from **g** to **dz** in both tenses. Thus **kliedz** 'shout' conjugates like this:

es	kliedzu	kliedzu
tu	kliedz	kliedzi
viņš	kliedz	kliedza
mēs	kliedzam	kliedzām
jūs	kliedzat	kliedzāt
viņi	kliedz	kliedza

Other such verbs include:

saukt call
plūkt pick, pluck

teikt	say
veikt	make, do, accomplish
rūkt	roar
slaukt	milk
sīkt	hum, buzz
lūgt	beg, pray
beigt	finish, end
sniegt	pass, hand, give
aizliegt	forbid (+ dat.)
zviegt	neigh

Naturally this also applies to derivatives of these verb stems, such as **saasniegt** 'reach, attain', **pasniegt** 'pass, hand over', **pabeigt** 'complete', **paveikt** 'achieve' and so on.

Declension of place-names

The Latvian language is very particular about the form of place-names, both native and foreign. All place-names must clearly express gender and be declinable. Most have feminine singular forms (**Aglona**), but some have masculine plural forms (**Preiļi**). They all decline regularly, like other nouns: **Aglonā, Preiļos** and so on. Foreign names (if they remain unaltered) are treated as if they had Latvian genders: **Helsinki** gives **Helsinkos** 'in Helsinki'; **Roma** gives **Romā** 'in Rome'. If they are altered, they take a feminine final vowel: **Londona, Čikāga** and so on.

Definite form of the adjective with place-names

Tādā veidā var redzēt daudz ko no skaistās Latvijas.

In that way one can see a lot of beautiful Latvia.

Notice that in Latvian we say '*the* beautiful Latvia', using the definite form of the adjective with place-names.

Future tense of reflexive verbs

Tad dosimies uz autoostu!

We'll go (or: Let's go) to the bus station then!

The future-tense forms of reflexive verbs are quite straightforward: you simply add the usual reflexive ending **-ies** to all forms of the future tense of the non-reflexive equivalent, with a slight

adjustment to the first- and second-person singular. For example, compare the conjugations of **dot** 'give' and **doties** 'go, set off':

es	došu	došos
tu	dosi	dosies
viņš	dos	dosies
mēs	dosim	dosimies
jūs	dosit	dosities
viņi	dos	dosies

Dialogue 2

At the bus station

Baiba enquires at the ticket office about how to get to Aglona by bus

- BAIBA: Sakiet, lūdzu, kad iet autobuss uz Aglonu?
 DARBINIECE: Uz Aglonu vispār neiet autobusi!
 BAIBA: Bet esmu dzirdējusi, ka ar autobusu var aizbraukt uz Aglonu, tikai jāpārsēžas Preiļos.
 DARBINIECE: Tad tie ir laikam kādi privātie autobusi, un par privātiem firmām mēs nekā nezinām!
 CITS KLIENTS: Es zinu, kur atrodas Aglonas autobusa stāvvietā. Ejiet uz dzelzceļa stacijas pusi, un tur redzēsīt stāvvietu. Bet autobuss neiet katru dienu.
 BAIBA: Paldies jums!
 KLIENTS: Nav par ko.
 BAIBA: Nu, bērni, mums laimējās, tur ir autobuss. Redziet: 'Rīga - Preiļi - Aglona'. Uzzināšu, kad mēs varēsim braukt.
 Labdien! Vai šis autobuss iet uz Aglonu arī citās dienās?
 Jā, tas brauc otrdienās, ceturtdienās un sestdienās.
 Cik tas atiet?
 Atiet no Rīgas pulksten 17.30 (pussešos), un iebrauc Aglonā pulksten 21.55 (divdesmit vienos piecdesmit piecas).
 Un cik tas atiet no Aglonas?
 Agri no rīta, pulksten 4.40 (bez divdesmit minūtēm

piecos) tas dodas atpakaļ, un pienāk Rīgā pulksten 9.20 (deviņos divdesmit).

BAIBA: Tik agri! Un cik maksā biļete?

VADĪTĀJS: Līdz Preiļiem, Ls. 2,35 (divus latus un trīsdesmit piecus santīmus), bet līdz Aglonai, Ls. 2,60 (divus latus un sešdesmit santīmus).

Vocabulary

(ne-...) vispār	(not) at all	atiet	leave, depart
privāts	private	iebraukt	arrive
firma	company, firm	izbraukt	depart
klients	customer, client	pienākt	arrive, get in
stāvvietā	stopping-place	maksāt	pay; cost
	(stāvēt 'stand', vieta 'place')	biļete	ticket
stacija	station	lats	lat, major unit of Latvian
nav par ko	(idiom) don't mention it	santīms	currency unit, minor unit, 1/100th of a lat
laimējies	to be lucky		
uzzināt	find out		

Language points

Negation of the pronoun object of a negative verb

Par privātiem firmām mēs nekā nezinām!

We know nothing about private companies!

Following a rule we noted on page 97 above, the pronoun after a negative verb appears in the genitive case: **nekas** gives **nekā**.

Gerunds in -šana

Virtually any verb can be made into a gerund (a noun indicating an action) by removing the -t of the infinitive and adding -šana: **atiet** 'depart' gives **atiešana** 'departure'; **pārdot** 'sell' gives **pārdošana** 'selling, sale'; **zināt** 'know' gives **zināšana** 'knowledge'.

A note about currency

As we have already seen, the main unit of Latvian currency is the **lats** or **lat**, divided into 100 **santīmi**. Prices are indicated with the abbreviation **Ls.** and a comma for a decimal point, thus: **Ls. 1,60**. It was the currency of the first independent Latvian republic (1918–40), was superseded by the rouble, and then re-introduced in 1993.



Exercise 1

Translate into Latvian:

- 1 The train was already leaving.
- 2 Although she forbade me, I still milked the cows.
- 3 What did they shout at you?
- 4 They didn't say anything.
- 5 Last Tuesday we travelled by bus to Ogre.
- 6 The bus left Preiļi at three minutes to seven.
- 7 We begged the driver to stop.
- 8 Did you hand him the ticket?

Exercise 2

Put the verbs into the past tense:

- 1 Mēs (pabeigt) darbu pulksten septiņos.
- 2 Zīrgi (zviegt).
- 3 Vadītājs mums (aizliegt) stāvēt autobusā braukšanas laikā.
- 4 Viņu (saukt) par Pēteri. ('He was called Peter')
- 5 No rīta mēs (slaukt) govīs.
- 6 Kad es viņu (palūgt 'ask'), viņa man (pasniegt) laikrakstu.
- 7 Cik puķu viņi (noplūkt)?
- 8 Vai jūs (sasniegt 'achieve') savus mērķus (mērķis 'aim')?

Exercise 3

What are the gerund forms of the verbs in parentheses in exercise 2?

Exercise 4

Make these sentences negative:

- 1 Virtuvē ir pudeles.
- 2 Viņai ir vīrs.
- 3 Uz galda ir tēja.
- 4 Mežā bija uguns.
- 5 Skolā šodien bija lekcija.
- 6 Laukā ir lieli zirgi.
- 7 Autobusā būs pasažieri.
- 8 Viņai bija patīkamas atmiņas ('memories').

Language in action

Study the timetable for the Riga–Aglona bus, and answer the questions below, writing the times out in words:

	Pienāk	Atiet
Rīga	18.28	17.30
Ogre	19.30	18.33
Aizkraukle	19.30	19.35
Plaviņas	19.57	20.02
Līvāni	20.38	20.43
Preiļi	21.20	21.25
Aglona	21.55	

- 1 Cik ilgi autobuss brauc no Rīgas līdz Ogrē?
- 2 Cikos tas ie brauc Aizkrauklē?
- 3 Cikos tas atiet no Aizkraukles?
- 4 Cik ilgs laiks ir starp pienākšanu Plaviņas un atiešanu no Līvāniem uz Preiļiem?
- 5 Cik ilgs ir brauciens no Rīgas uz Aglonu?
- 6 Cik ilgi autobuss stāv katrā vietā?
- 7 Cikos tas ie brauc Preiļos?
- 8 Cikos tas atiet no Plaviņām?



RĪGA
TRAMVAJA
TROLEJBUSA UN
AUTOBUSA
BIĻETE

6

santīmi
Sērļa 032
119338

9 Dzīvokļi un mājas

Flats and houses

By the end of this lesson you should know more about:

- using numbers
- irregular verbs
- verb tenses and participles

Dialogue 1

How people live

The Kalējs family cannot help noticing the cramped conditions in which their hosts live. One day Gunārs and Jānis are discussing with Baiba and Aija the housing problems of Latvians, especially in towns

BAIBA: Laikam jums ir gājis ļoti grūti Rīgā ar dzīvokļiem šeit Rīgā.

AIJA: Jā, kad bērni bija mazi, mēs četratā dzīvojām vienā istabā. Ilgi nebija iespējams tikt pie dzīvokļa.

BAIBA: Un kad jūs dabūjāt lielāku dzīvokli, tad bērni bija jau izauguši?

AIJA: Jā, arī viņiem bija ļoti grūti iztikt. Ivaram un Dacei taču problēmas daļēji atrisinājās, kad privatizācijas gaitā Ivaram vecākiem izdevās iegūt savā īpašumā māju laukos, kurā Ivars ar Daci pašlaik dzīvo.

GUNĀRS: Padomju laikā mēs ilgus gadus gaidījām rindā, un vēl tagad daudzi gaida iespēju saņemt jaunu dzīvokli. Piemēram, man ir draugi, kas dzīvo komunālā dzīvoklī, bet trīs cilvēki divās istabās, un grib apmainīt dzīvokli, bet naudas nav.

BAIBA: Vai dzīvokļi ir dārgi?

- AIDA:** Jā, sevišķi Rīgā. Pat vienistabas dzīvokļi tagad maksā ap pieciem tūkstošiem latu. Ar mūsu algām to nopirkt nav reāli.
- JĀNIS:** Kāds ir stāvoklis ar privatizācijas sertifikātiem?
- GUNĀRS:** Vismaz līdz šim nebija iespējams nopirkt dzīvokli par sertifikātiem, tikai par naudu. Galvenā problēma ir tā, ka privatizācija iet ļoti lēni bet kooperatīvie dzīvokļi ir ļoti dārgi.
- JĀNIS:** To visu mums, Austrālijā dzīvojošiem grūti saprast. Pie mums pērk un pārdod mājas, nevis dzīvokļus. Un arī dzīvokļiem ir parasti lielāka platība. Ačmredzot pie jums dzīvokļa pirkšana ir daudz sarežģītāka lieta.
- GUNĀRS:** Un ja tu neesi dzīvokļu rindā, tad savu problēmu var risināt vienīgi, mainot dzīvokli.

Vocabulary

mēs četratā	the four of us	komunāls	shared, municipal, communal
istaba	room	apmaiņīt	exchange
tikt pie	secure, get hold of	dārgs	dear, expensive
taču	however, though	tūkstoš	thousand
problēma	problem	reāls	realistic, practicable
daļējs	partial	vismaz	at least
atrisināt	solve	galvenais	the main (definite form only)
privatizācija	privatization	kooperatīvs	co-operative
vecāki	parents	pārdot	sell
izdoties	succeed in, manage to (+ dat.)	nevis	and/but not
iegūt īpašumā	acquire ownership (īpašums	platība	area, space
	'property')	āčmredzot	evidently, obviously
pašlaik	at present	sarežģīts	complicated
daudzi	many (people)	risināt	solve
iespeja	opportunity	vienīgi	only, solely

Language points

Numbers signifying groups

Mēs četratā dzīvojam vienā istabā.
The four of us lived in one room.

To express concepts like 'the four of us', 'the three of them', and so on, we can use an adverb formed by adding **-atā** to the stem of the number: **mēs četratā** 'the three of us'; likewise **viņi trijātā** 'the three of them' and so on.

Past tense of irregular reflexive verbs

Ivara vecākiem izdevās iegūt īpašumā māju laukos.
Ivars' parents managed to secure a house in the country.

We have already seen (page 85) how the past tense of regular reflexive verbs is formed. Let us note here that for irregular verbs it is formed in just the same way, adding the same endings to the irregular past-tense stem: **dot** gives **deva**; **dodas** gives **devās**.

'The fact that'

As we saw in lesson 4, 'that' is expressed by **ka**. Look at this expression used by Gunārs in the dialogue:

Galvenā problēma ir tā, ka privatizācija iet ļoti lēni.
The main problem is (the fact) that privatization is going very slowly.

'The fact that' is usually expressed by **tas/tā** (in the appropriate gender and case), **ka** ...

Round numbers and the genitive case

Most numbers in Latvian agree, like adjectives, with the noun they qualify. We saw an example above: **vienā istabā** 'in one room'. But certain 'round' numbers, such as **simt** 'hundred', **tūkstoš** 'thousand', may be regarded as nouns themselves, and therefore will govern the *genitive plural* of the noun they qualify. They decline like masculine nouns:

Nevis

In our country they buy and sell houses, not flats.

Pie mums mēdz pārdot un pirkt nevis dzīvokļus, bet gan mājas.

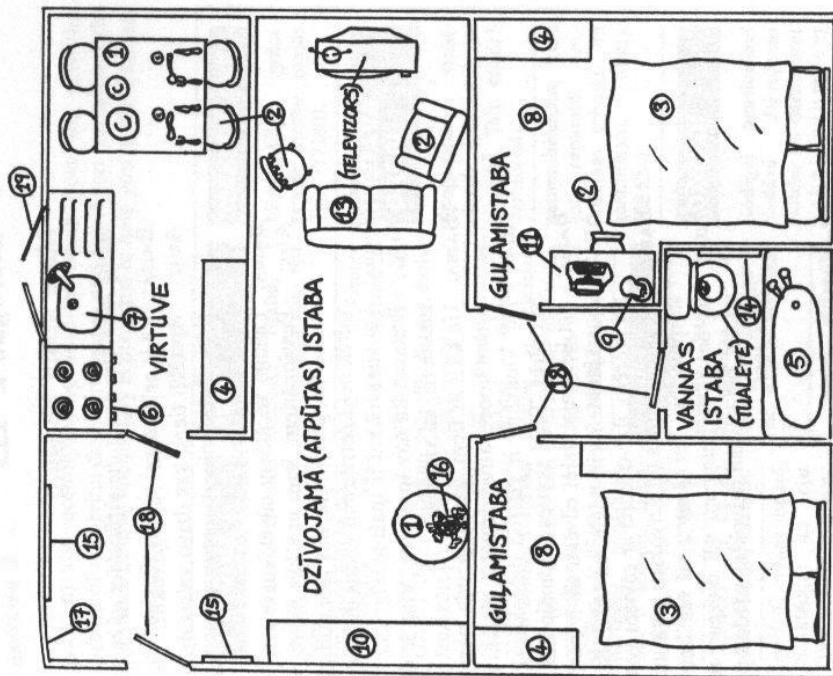
Language in action

Look at the floor plan. Using all the prepositions and ways of expressing spatial relations that you know (with the help of the Glossary at the back of the book), write complete sentences in Latvian to answer the question **Kur atrodas ...?**

- (a) spogulis
(b) skapji (visi)
(c) plīts
(d) gultas (abas)
(e) lampa
(f) divāns
(g) grāmatas
(h) pukes
(i) krēslī
(j) rakstāmmašīna (typewriter)
(k) glāzes, karotes, nazi un dakšiņas (glasses, spoons, knives (sg. **nazi**) and forks)
(l) bļodas un trauki (bowls and plates)
(m) drēbes

Additional vocabulary (the furniture has been numbered to help you):

gulānistaba	bedroom	dzīvojamā istaba,	living-room,
virtuve	kitchen	atpūtas istaba	lounge
vannas istaba	bathroom	galds	table (1)



krēsls	chair (2)	atzveltnes krēsls	armchair (12)
gulta	bed (3)	dīvāns	sofa (13)
skapis	cupboard (4)	spoguļis	mirror (14)
vanna	bath tub (5)	glezna	painting (15)
plīts	oven (6)	vāze	vase (16)
izlietne	sink (7)	grīda	floor
paklājs	carpet (8)	siena	wall (17)
lampa	lamp (9)	durvis (pl. only)	door (18)
grāmatu plaukts	bookshelf (10)	griesti (pl. only)	ceiling
rakstāmgalds	desk (11)	logs	window (19)

Dialogue 2

More about housing

Baiba asks Aija about the difficulties of everyday life in a Riga flat

BAIBA: Kā ir ar ērtībām šādā dzīvoklī?

AIJA: Apstākļi tiem, kas dzīvo valsts dzīvokļos, ir joprojām ļoti grūti. Pakalpojumi maksā dārgi, un ziemā vēl papildus jāmaksā par apkuri.

BAIBA: Laikam vecākiem cilvēkiem ir grūti iztikēt.

AIJA: Pensionāriem, kam nav kas palīdz, ir sevišķi grūti. Mana vecā māte, piemēram, nav labi nodrošināta. Viņa dzīvo jau vairāk nekā četrdesmit gadus divistabu dzīvoklī Ilģuciemā.

BAIBA: Vai viņa ir ērtē vai ir īpašniece?

AIJA: Protams, ka nav īpašniece. Viņa ir tikai īrniece. Joprojām maksā īri, kā vienmēr.

BAIBA: Un kā ir ar tiem, kam ir nauda lai nopirktu dzīvokli? Vai, pērkot kooperatīvo dzīvokli, viņiem ir jāstājas kādā rindā? Nē. Vienkārši ir jāatrod dzīvoklis, ko pārdod, un tad to var pirkt. Tikai skaties sludinājumus avīzēs.

BAIBA: Bet lielākajai daļai cilvēku tie ir pārāk dārgi?

AIJA: Jā, arī jauniem cilvēkiem, un tādēļ tik daudz jaunu cilvēku, arī precēto, dzīvo kopā ar saviem vecākiem.

BAIBA: Pie mums mājas un dzīvokļus pērk un pārdod ar aģentūru starpniecību. Vai tādas ir arī šeit Latvijā?

AIJA: Jā, bet tā ir jauna un vēl diezgan reta parādība. Ir arī izsoles, bet parasti dzīvokļus pārdod paši to īpašnieki tieši pircējiem.

Vocabulary

ērtība	comfort, convenience, amenity	maksa	fee, payment
joprojām	still (more emphatic than vēl)	augsts	high
pakalpojums	service (gas, heating, etc.)	pensionārs	pensioner
apkure	heating	nodrošināt	provide (for)
papilds	addition, supplement	Ilģuciems	a western suburb of Riga
		īrēt	rent
		īpašniece (f.)	owner (m. īpašnieks)

īrniece (f.)	tenant (m. īrnieks)	avīze	newspaper
īrēt	rent	pārāk	too
vienmēr	always	tādēļ	therefore
nauda	money	precēts	married (precēt 'marry')
stāties	stand (pres. stājos, stāties, stājas, etc.)	aģentūra	agency
vienkāršs	simple	starpniecība	mediation
meklēt	seek, search	rets	rare
sludinājums	advertisement, announcement	parādība	phenomenon
		izsole	auction

Language points

The past passive participle

Mana vecā māte, piemēram, nav labi nodrošināta.

My old mother, for example, is not well provided for.

The past passive participle of the verb, expresses what has been done to the subject or object that it refers to, rather than what has been done by it (active participle). It is very simple to form; simply add the appropriate adjectival ending (indicating the appropriate number, gender, case and definiteness/indefiniteness), to the infinitive of the verb. Nodrošināt, for instance, is the infinitive of the verb 'to provide for'; by adding the appropriate adjectival ending we create the participle 'provided for'. Again, we read in the dialogue:

tik daudz jaunu cilvēku, arī precēto, dzīvo kopā ar saviem vecākiem.

so many young people, even the married ones, live together with their parents.

Here precēto is the definite genitive plural (both genders) form of the past passive participle of precēt 'marry'.

Present continuous

Viņa dzīvo jau vairāk nekā četrdesmit gadus divistabu istabu dzīvoklī.

She has been living for more than forty years in a two-roomed flat.

Latvian has no direct equivalent of the English 'has been ...-ing' continuous present tense. Instead, to convey the same idea of action continuing into the present, we use the simple present tense, sometimes with **jau** 'already' for added emphasis.

The agent noun ending -nieks/niece

Various types of endings can be added to the stems of other words to make nouns indicating doers or agents; we have already met the ending **-ājs/-āja** (or **-ējs/-ēja**) which is added to verb stems. The ending **-nieks** (m.), **-niece** (f.) is generally added to *noun* stems to indicate the holder of a particular status or quality. In this passage we met the (feminine) nouns **īrniece** (tenant) and **īpašniece** (owner). Other examples: **pavalstnieks** 'citizen', **saimnieks** 'landlord', **rīdzinieks** 'inhabitant of Riga' and their feminine counterparts.

Exercise 1

Translate into Latvian:

- 1 Her flat is provided with all conveniences.
- 2 The landlord is well paid.
- 3 Latvia is a rarely visited country.
- 4 For (as long as) three years my sister has been looking for a well-built house.
- 5 For young married people it is hard to get a good flat.
- 6 You will have to stand in the queue ('will have to': **būs + Jā...**).

Exercise 2

Insert the correct participial form of the verb in parentheses:

- 1 Mēs neko nesasniedzam, (stāvēt) rindā.
- 2 Valsts dzīvokļi vēl nav (privatizēt).
- 3 Kaimiņa ģimene dzīvo kopā ar savu (precēt) meitu.
- 4 Vai viņi, (īrēt) savu dzīvokli, maksā daudz naudas?
- 5 Mana māsa, (skatīties) sludinājumus, (beigt) atrada jaunu māju.
- 6 Taču diemžēl, (zvanīt) īpašniekam, viņa uzzināja, ka māja jau ir (pārdot).

Exercise 3

Look at the accompanying advertisements from the classified section of a Latvian daily newspaper and see if you can answer the questions below. Vocabulary is provided to help you in the Glossary at the back of the book.

PĀRDOD	IRE	MEKLĒ DARBU
2 istabu dzīvokli (valsts, 2.stāvs, telefons) kopā ar garāžu (privāto) blakus mājai, Purvciemā. Tāl. 360473	studente istabu, 1 istabas dzīvokli, lēti. Tāl. 562859.	bilancspējīga grāmatvede darbu mājās. Tāl. 7172801.
GAZ 24 furgonu Jaunmārupē. Cena pēc vienošanās. Tāl. 933659, 933262.	radio darbiniece dzīvokli ar ērtībām un telefonu, vēlams centrā. Tāl. 225467, darba laikā, Ivetai.	PIEDĀVĀ DARBU
Opel Omega Caravan (2,0 i), 1988.g., zila nobraukums 146 000km, ideālstāvoklī, nertusējis, nepārkrašots, 5 ātrumi, signalizācija, stereo. Cena Ls 2733. Tāl.228013.	NC žurnālists ar ģimeni - dzīvojamu platību ar telefonu. Vēlams no īpašnieka. Tāl.465725 no 9 līdz 20, 260902 vakaros.	tipogrāfijas strādnieci. (pārziņei) ar pieredzi. Tāl. 468813 darbīdīnās.
GAZ-21 par Ls 80. Tāl. 918206, vakaros.	IZIRĒ	automehāniķim, kurš var remontēt iekšrašanas tehniku un galdnīekam. Miera ielā 62-1.
govī (Latvijas brūnā, Slaktācija) un telu. Tāl. 914096, vakaros.	2 istabu dzīvokli, dārzu un garāžu Jelgavā. Rakstīt: a/k 63, Rīga, LV-1002.	DAŽĀDI
2 istabu dzīvokli Purvciemā vai Teikā. Interesē visi varianti. Tāl. 360086.		Godīgai pensionārei piedāvā dzīvojamo platību un dārzu pret pakalpojumiem mājāsaimniecībā. Tāl. 916567.

- 1 What does the journalist specify that he wants to rent (īrēt)?
- 2 What does the student say she wants to rent?
- 3 What is available for hire (izīrēt) in Pārdaugava?

- 4 What is available for an honest female pensioner?
- 5 What is available for hire in Jelgava?
- 6 Describe the Opel Omega car that is for sale.
- 7 Find an animal for sale. What is it?
- 8 What is for sale at Purvciems?
- 9 A radio employee has something for hire. What is it?
- 10 What jobs are on offer in Peace Street (*Miera iela*)?

Reading passage

How people used to live

But what kind of houses did Latvians occupy in past centuries? This is something that our visitors were able to see when they visited the Brīvības muzejs (Open-air Museum) in Riga (see lesson 6). Here is a passage from a description of the way Latvians used to live (from a guidebook to the Museum). Use the Glossary at the back of the book to help you. Pay particular attention to the use of participles

Tāpat kā citām Ziemeļaustrumeiropas tautām, arī latviešiem būvmateriāls bija koks. Māla kleķa, akmens vai ķieģeļu ēku celtniecība ir raksturīga 19. un 20. gadsimtu periodam, un arī tad tikai atsevišķām celtnu grupām, zemniecības slāņiem vai apvidiem.

Par vissenākajām – stāvu koku ēkām – saglabājušās tikai atmiņas tautas dziesmās, un savā visvienkāršākajā veidā – vidzemnieku slietenos – vasaras virtuvēs. Visas pārējās zemnieku ēkas bija gulbūves, kuras senākos laikos liktas tieši uz zemes, pamatnīcai (apakšējo vainagu balķiem) izvēloties ozola vai sveķainus balķus.

10 Ārsta vizīte

The doctor comes

By the end of this lesson you should know more about:

- parts of the body in Latvian
- how to address people
- diminutives
- verb participles

Dialogue 1

Calling the doctor

One morning, when the family is planning to go out for the day, little Dzidra complains that she is feeling unwell

- BAIBA: Mēs visi gatavojamies iet ārā, bet tu esi vēl gultā! Kas tev kaitē?
- DZIDRA: Nezinu, bet es jutos slikti.
- BAIBA: Vai tu esi slima? Vai tev sāp galva?
- DZIDRA: Jā, mazliet sāp galva, un arī kakls.
- BAIBA: Tev ir karsta piere, laikam tev ir paaugstināta temperatūra. Tu nedrīksti šodien iet ārā. Tev jāpaliek gultā. Es izsaukšu ārstu.
- DZIDRA: Bet es ļoti gribēju braukt līdz!
- BAIBA: Jā, jā, es saprotu, bet tu esi saslimusi. Bez tevis mēs nekur nebrauksim. Vispirms tev jāatveseļojas. Tikai tad brauksim.

Vocabulary

gatavoties kaiņēt	prepare, get ready harm, hurt (pres.)	karsts piere	hot forehead
	kaiš: kas tev kaiš 'what's wrong with you'	paaugstināt driksēt	raise, increase be allowed
justies	feel (reflexive: 1st person pres.)	lūgt	ask, request (pres.)
	jūtos	ārsts	!līdz: see lesson 1) doctor
slikts	bad	līdz (ar)	(along) with
slims	sick, ill	saslimt	fall ill, get sick
sāpēt	hurt, ache	atvesloties	recover
kakls	neck; throat		

Language points

Phrases

Kas tev kaiš? (or: kaiņ)

What's wrong with you? (More literally: What ails you?)

Mān sāp galva.

My head aches.

Notice how in both of these constructions the *dative* of the subject of the feeling is used with the verb in the third person. Kaiš is an irregular (but more common) form of *kaiņ*, from *kaiņēt* 'harm, hurt'.

Parts of the body

You already know *galva*, *kāja*, *roka*, *plecs*, and now *kakls*, *seja*. Here are some more:

mugura	back	zobs	tooth
mute	mouth	mēle	tongue (also 'language')
acs (f.)	eye	bārda	beard
deguns	nose	krūts (f.)	breast, bosom
mati (pl.)	hair	piere	forehead
		pirksts	finger (kājas pirksts 'toe')

Dialogue 2

The doctor comes

The doctor arrives and Baiba shows him in

- ĀRSTS: Labrīt! Vai jūs aicinājāt ārstu?
 BAIBA: Jā, mēs gaidījām jūs. Diemžēl ir mana meita saslimusi.
 ĀRSTS: Kur atrodas mazā slimniece?
 BAIBA: Šeit ir viņas gulamistaba, lūdzu.
 ĀRSTS: Labrīt, jaunkundzīt! Kā tev klājas?
 DZIDRA: Es jūtos slikti. Man sāp galva un kakls, un ēstgribas nav, gripu tikai dzert. Man ir mokošas galvassāpes.
 ĀRSTS: Izmērīsim tev temperatūru. Atver muti drusciņ. Tā! Un tagad novelk pidžamas jaku, lai es varētu izklausīt plaušas! Vai tu stipri klepo? Nē? Tikai nedaudz. Elpo dziļi! Tā! Paskatīsimies termometru. Jā, ir gan paaugstināta: 38,2.
 DZIDRA: Vai tā ir augsta?
 ĀRSTS: Tā ir augstāka nekā normāla, bet nav tik nopietna. Tas pāries, un tu drīz atveselosies! Tagad atver vēlreiz muti un paskatīsim rīkli. Saki: ā!
 DZIDRA: Ā!
 ĀRSTS: Labi. Hm, neliels pietūkums. Acīmredzot tev ir gripa, meitenīt! Pašlaik ir daudz cilvēku, kas slimo ar gripu. Es uzrakstīšu recepti. Bet tev jāpaliek siltā gultā vismaz trīs dienas. Un ja tu triju dienu laikā neatveselosies, tad tavai mātei jāpiezvana man vēlreiz, jā?
 DZIDRA: Jā, paldies, ārsta kungs.

Vocabulary

aicināt	call, summon, invite	mokošs	splitting, racking (moci 'torture')
slimnieks (m.), slimniece (f.)	patient, invalid	galvassāpes (pl. only)	headache
jaunkundze	miss (diminutive)	izmērīt	measure
klāties	jaunkundzīte	be, get on (Kā tev drusciņ)	a little
	klājas? 'how are you?'	novilkt	take off
nelabs	bad, sick, unwell	pidžama	pyjamas
		jaka	jacket, top

izklausīt	listen to	nopietns	serious
plaušas	lungs	drīz	soon
klepot	cough	rīkle	throat
nedaudz	a bit, a little,	pietūkums	swelling
	slightly	gripa	influenza
elpot	breathe	meitene	girl
dziļš	deep	recepte	prescription (also: 'recipe')
paskatīties	take a look at	piezvanīt	ring up
termometri	thermometer	vēlreiz	again, once more
normāls	normal		

Language points

Diminutives

The doctor greets Dzidra like this:

Labrīt, jaunkundzīt!

Good morning, (little) miss!

Jaunkundzīt is the vocative case form of **jaunkundzīte**, which in turn is a diminutive form of **jaunkundze** 'young lady, miss'. Diminutives are a very common feature of Latvian, not only to express smallness, but also endearment and emotional closeness. For example, in poetry we might find words such as **saulīte** 'little sun', which does not imply smallness, but rather a positive emotional attachment. Later the doctor calls her **meitenīt** 'little girl' as well. The principal diminutive endings are:

-ītis (m.), -īte (f.):	brālīs	brother	brāītis
	upe	river	upīte
-īņš (m.), -īņa (f.):	dēls	son	dēliņš
	māsa	sister	māsiņa

Other less common diminutive endings are **-elis/-ele** (**puisis** 'boy' gives **puīselis**); **-ene** (f.), **-ēns** (usually masculine) (**teļš** 'calf' gives **teļēns**); **-īņš/-īņa** (**akmens** 'stone' gives **akmentiņš**).

Addressing people

Dzidra thanked the doctor like this:

Jā, paldies, ārsta kungs.

Yes, thanks, (Mr) doctor.

It is quite common in Latvian to address people using both their

title and their marital status. Notice how the title appears in the genitive before the other term of address, which might be **kungs** 'Mr', **kundze** 'Mrs', or, as we saw above, **jaunkundze** 'Miss'.

Likewise, if we address a person by using their surname and one of these titles, the surname appears in the genitive:

Miesnieka kungs	Mr Miesnieks
Miesnieces kundze	Mrs Miesnieks

(Names ending in **-nieks** have the feminine ending **-niece**, like the words from which they are derived: **Miesnieks** means 'butcher'.)

Miesnieces jaunkundze	Miss Miesnieks
------------------------------	----------------

Future tense of reflexive verbs

The doctor told Dzidra:

Tas pāries, un tu drīz atveselosies!

It will pass, and you'll soon be better!

Forming the future tense is a simple matter of adding the reflexive ending **-ies** to the future tense of the active verb. In the sentence above, the first verb is active, the second reflexive. For example:

es celsos	I		
tu celsies	you		
viņš celsies	he		
mēs celsimies	we		will get up
jūs celsities	you		
viņi celsies	they		

The adjectival present participle ending -oš-

Dzidra told the doctor:

Man ir mokošas galvassāpes.

I have splitting headaches.

We have already met other kinds of present participle in Latvian. The one used here, which is formed by adding **-oš-** + the appropriate adjectival ending (for gender, case and definiteness) to the *first-person singular present tense of the verb*, is used *only* as an adjective, unlike **-ot**, which is not declinable. Here are a few examples:

mocīt (es moku)	torture	> mokošas	splitting
tecēt (es teku)	flow	> galvassāpes	headaches
krist (es krītu)	fall	> tekošs ūdens	flowing water
degt (es degu)	burn	> krītoša lapa	falling leaf
		> degošs mežs	burning forest

Note that the participle of the verb 'to be' is **esošs**.

Note also that the word for 'future' or 'to-be' in the adjectival sense (as in **topošs tēvs** 'future father/father-to-be') is **topošs**, formed from **tapt (es topu)** 'become'.

Exercise 1

Translate this dialogue into Latvian:

- Good morning, Dr Liepiņš!
- Good morning, Mr Priedītis! How are you?
- My back hurts. Please could you look at it?
- Yes, of course. How long has it been hurting you?
- For (= 'already') three days, since I helped my mother carry her luggage to the bus station.
- Please remove your shirt (= **kreklis**). Does it hurt here?
- Yes, it hurts a lot. It's a burning pain.
- And here too?
- No, not so much.
- It would be best to do an X-ray (**rentgena caurskate**). Could you come back tomorrow to do that?
- Yes, doctor.
- Good. Go to the medical centre (**poliklīnika**) and talk to (**sameklēt**) the sister.
- Thank you, doctor. Good-bye!

Exercise 2

If you are working with a partner or teacher, improvise a similar conversation with a doctor or dentist (**zobārsts**) about a pain in your:

- 1 leg
- 2 arm
- 3 tooth
- 4 eyes

Exercise 3

Translate into Latvian:

- 1 A growing child needs plenty of sleep (**miegs**).
- 2 My mother ran after a moving (use **braukt**) train.
- 3 He jumped into (**ielēkt**) the flowing river.
- 4 Mothers-to-be are not allowed to smoke (**smēkēt**).
- 5 The doctor examined my aching chest.
- 6 Look at the falling snow (**sniegs**).
- 7 Next (= 'the coming') week they are travelling to Lithuania.
- 8 They will be meeting Lithuanian-speaking people.

Language in use

Humour

Here are some Latvian jokes (from the newspaper *Diena*). Additional vocabulary is in the glossary at the end of the book.

- Sakiet, lūdzu, ar ko jūs barojat šo vistu?
- Kāpēc jūs tas interesē?
- Es arī gribētu būt tik slaida.

Gaitenī sarunājas divi kolēģi.

Garām pāiet redakcijas jaunā un glītā operatore. Viens no vīriešiem, noskatot aizejošo meiteni, saka:

- Hm, īsta skaistule, vai ne?
- Pieci bērni, - mierīgi atbild otrs.
- Viņai? Nevar būt!
- Nevis viņai, bet tev!

Zooveikalā ienāk pārskaities pircējs.

- Es pie jums pagājušajā nedēļā nopirku kanārijputniņu. Jūs apgalvojāt, ka tie dzīvo pat desmit gadu, bet manējais nākamajā dienā nomira.

- Viņam tā laikam bija desmitā dzimšanas diena.

- Saki, Anna, vai tavas māsas līgavainis ir bagāts cilvēks?
- Laikam jau nē, jo tēvs visu laiku atkārtoti - ak, nabaga jaunais cilvēks...

Izejot no veikala, sieva saka vīram:

- Paņem, lūdzu, bērnu un atdod man olas. Tu tās vari nejauši nomest un sasist.

Reading passage

Anna Brigadere (1861–1933) has for a long time been one of Latvia's best-loved authoresses. Here is a short passage from her novel Kvēlošā lokā ('In a Blazing Circle', 1928), which looks back at events in Latvia before the First World War and independence

Ar Vaidas starpniecību Ziedīņa ģimene dabūja bērniem apavus un drēbes, arī pārtikas produktus, lai gan aprobežotā mērā, jo trūkmucietēji bija pārāk daudz. Mazājo vēlēšanās pēc skanošām taurēm un pašskrejošiem ratiem Vaida paturēja pie sevis un cerēja, ka šīs uz Ziemassvētkiem realizēt.

Kādu dienu Pentu kalpone Kristīne, mājiņiekiem sēdot' pie galda, pačukstēja Vaidai: 'Iznāciet nu kukņā. Tur jūs kāda meklē.' 'Kas tā tāda ir?' Vaida ļautāja.

"To es jums nevaru sacīt," atbildēja meita.

Visi pašmēļas. Zināja jau, ka Kristīne pat viskdienišķākām lietām mīl dot noslēpuma nokrāsu.

Vīrtuvē gaidīja Irma.

'Zināt ko,' viņa, padevusi labdieneni, gāja tieši uz mērķi, 'es varu dabūt vietu kādā mazgātavā, pie veļas pienešanas, bet tur man jāpļūst vāciski. Es nu atnācu pie jums. Vai nevarat mani drusku pamācīt?'²²

1 Majiničiem sēdot 'while the household sat'; if the subject of the participle is different from the subject of the main clause, it takes the dative.

2 Note carefully the use of the verb prefix **pa-** in this passage to indicate a temporary or momentary action.

Vocabulary

apavi	footwear				'needy person')
produkts	product	skaņot			sound
aprobežots	limited	taure			trumpet
trūkums	shortage, need, poverty (trūkcietētjs)	rati			cart (paškrejoši rati 'carts that move by themselves')

CASSETTES ORDER FORM

Please supply one/two/..... double cassette(s) of

ISBN 0-415-11798-4
Colloquial Latvian, Moseley.

	Price	£14.99* incl. VAT	\$24.99 (Can. \$34.99)*
1000			
2000			
3000			
4000			
5000			
6000			
7000			
8000			
9000			
10000			
11000			
12000			
13000			
14000			
15000			
16000			
17000			
18000			
19000			
20000			
21000			
22000			
23000			
24000			
25000			
26000			
27000			
28000			
29000			
30000			
31000			
32000			
33000			
34000			
35000			
36000			
37000			
38000			
39000			
40000			
41000			
42000			
43000			
44000			
45000			
46000			
47000			
48000			
49000			
50000			
51000			
52000			
53000			
54000			
55000			
56000			
57000			
58000			
59000			
60000			
61000			
62000			
63000			
64000			
65000			
66000			
67000			
68000			
69000			
70000			
71000			
72000			
73000			
74000			
75000			
76000			
77000			
78000			
79000			
80000			
81000			
82000			
83000			
84000			
85000			
86000			
87000			
88000			
89000			
90000			
91000			
92000			
93000			
94000			
95000			
96000			
97000			
98000			
99000			
100000			

I enclose payment with order.

Please debit my Access/Mastercharge/Mastercard/Visa/American Express. Account number:

[illegible]

.....Expiry date

Date.....

Signature

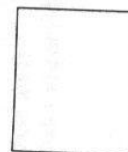
BIBLIOTECA GENERAL

paturēt	hold, keep	nokrāsa	hint, tint, shade
Ziemassvētki	Christmas	padot	give (greeting)
realizēt	carry out,	mērķis	target, goal
	implement	mazgātava	laundry
pačukstēt	whisper	veļa	linen, washing
iznākt	come (out)	pieņemšana	reception
kukpa	(Russian) kitchen	vāciski	German
pasmielies	laugh (a little)	atnākt	come, arrive
ikdienišķs	everyday	drusku	a bit, a little
mīlēt	love	pamācīt	teach
noslēpums	mystery, secret		

Order from your bookseller or from:

ROUTLEDGE LTD
 10 Princes Street
 Cheriton House
 North Way
 Andover
 Hants
 SP10 5BE
 ENGLAND

ROUTLEDGE INC.
 29 West 35th Street
 New York
 NY 10001
 USA



11 Tirgus darījumi

Business dealings

By the end of this lesson you should know more about:

- the passive voice of the verb
- 'yours', 'mine', 'his' and other possessive expressions
- names of inhabitants of places
- word formation

Dialogue 1

Business talks

Jānis would like to establish a few business contacts for his Australian company while he is in Latvia, so he asks Gūnārs about the industry in which he works, the brewing industry

JĀNIS:

Līgo vakarā, kad mēs dzērām alu, man bija iespēja nogaršot dažādus alus. Tur bija tik plaša izvēle! Pie mums Austrālijā ir tikai dažas lielas darītavas, kas gandrīz visas ražo to pašu šķirni!

GŪNĀRS:

Redzi, mēs esam varena alus darītāju un cienītāju tauta. Katrā Baltijas valstī ir daudz alus ražotāju, visām gaumēm.

JĀNIS:

Bet kāpēc jūs alus netiek izvests uz ārzemēm?

GŪNĀRS:

Laikam tāpēc, ka mūsu darītavas nelieto konservantus. Tādēļ alu nevar ilgi glabāt. Un ņemot vērā patērētāju skaitu, pašreizējais ražošanas apjoms nespēj apmierināt pašmāju tirgu.

JĀNIS:

Kāpēc?

GŪNĀRS:

Cik es saprotu, patlaban neviena no Latvijas darītavām nestrādā ar pilnu jaudu.

JĀNIS: Vai tad tiek ievests citās zemēs ražots alus?

GŪNĀRS: Jā, ārzemju alus patlaban 'iebrūk' Latvijā. Un turklāt visu mūsu kaimiņvalstu lauksaimniecība tiek subsidēta, arī alus miežu audzēšana.

JĀNIS: Bet Latvijā ne?

GŪNĀRS: Nē, un redzi, gan ārzemju miežu audzētāji, gan alus darītāji atrodas krietni izdevīgākā stāvoklī nekā mūsējie. Tāpēc mūsu ražotājiem ir grūti izturēt konkurenci.

JĀNIS: Bet cik lielā mērā Latvijas darītavas ir atkarīgas no ārzemju piegādātājiem?

GŪNĀRS: Tā kā mēs paši samērā maz audzējam alus miežus, darītavas tiek spiestas iepirkt ārzemēs, ne tikai miežus, bet arī apiņus.

JĀNIS: Un latviešiem garšo arī ārzemēs ražotais alus?

GŪNĀRS: Garšo, bet tomēr mums patīk pašmājas ražotās šķirnes, kas tiek darītas pēc vecā parauga. Un tad gandrīz katram rajonam ir pašam sava darītava, kuras alus ir sevišķi iecienīts. Piemēram, vidzemniekiem ir allaž garšojis Cēsu alus, rīdziniekiem savas darītavas 'Aldara' alus, bauskiekiem vairāk patīk Bauskā ražotais alus. Tādā veidā alus brīvvalī spēj konkurēt ar ārzemju ražotājiem. Jā, man jāpiekrist tev, ka Latvijas alus ir garšīgs. Ārzemju ražotāji dižojas ar lepnām pudelēm un dārgu reklāmu, bet ja tā pavērtē, jāsecina, ka pašmājas alus ir labāks.

JĀNIS:

Vocabulary

nogaršot	taste, try	gaume	taste
dažāds	various, different	izvest	export
darītava	brewery	ārzemes	foreign countries (uz ārzemēm 'abroad')
ražot	produce	lietot	use
gandrīz	almost	konservants	preservative
šķirne	kind, sort	glabāt	keep
varens	mighty, great	ņemt vērā	take into consideration
cienītājs	admirer	patērēt	consume (patērētājs 'consumer')
valsts (f.)	appreciator	pašreizējais	current
	country (Baltijas valstis 'the Baltic countries' (Latvia, Lithuania, Estonia)	apjoms	volume
		apmierināt	satisfy

pašmāju cilvēki es saprotu patlaban	domestic as far as I know just now, at present work full	apinis garšot	hop be to the taste of (man garšo taste))
strādāt pilns janda ievest turklāt lauksaimniecība subsidēt gan ... gan ... krietns	capacity, power import besides agriculture subsidize both ... and ... considerable, substantial ours	šķirne paraugs sevišķi iecināt allaž 'Aldaris'	kind, sort pattern, model particularly fancy, favour, like always the biggest Latvian brewery, in Riga brew (branch of) industry agree (pres. piekritu, past piekritu)
mērs atkarīgs piegādāt tā kā maz	measure, extent, degree dependent supply since, as little (adv.), slightly compel, force purchase, buy in	brūvēt nozare piekrist garšīgs dīžoties lēpns pavērtēt secināt	delicious, tasty show off luxurious, splendid compare (a little) conclude
spiest iepirkt			

Language points

The passive voice

Look at these examples from the dialogue:

Bet kāpēc jūsu alus netiek izvests uz ārzemēm?
But why is your beer not exported abroad?

Vai tad tiek ievests citās zemēs ražots alus?
So is beer produced in other countries imported then?

The *passive voice* is what we commonly use when we wish to focus attention not on the doer of the action, but on the person or thing acted upon. In Latvian there are various kinds of impersonal or passive construction that we can use in various situations; we have already seen, for instance, that a sentence need not have a subject in Latvian. But perhaps the commonest kind of impersonal construction is the passive voice formed with the verb *tīkt*, which we have already met. On its own, it means 'become' or 'get', but with the past passive participle, it corresponds to the passive in English. In a passive sentence, the logical object of the action becomes the subject, and appears in the nominative case, and the participle agrees with it in number and gender:

Alus netiek izvests Beer is not exported.
Alus tiek ievests Beer is imported.

(Note also the word order in the second sentence: the subject is *ciņās zemēs ražots alus*, lit. 'in-other-countries-produced beer'.) Again in the dialogue Gunārs said:

mūsu kaimiņvalstu lauksaimniecība tiek subsidiēta.
our neighbours' agriculture is subsidized.

Here *subsidiēta* is feminine, to agree with *lauksaimniecība*.

'Yours', 'mine', 'ours'

Gunārs said in the dialogue that foreign producers were

krietni izdevīgākā stāvoklī nekā mūsējie
in a much more favourable position than ours

Special pronoun forms are derived from the possessive adjectives **mans**, **tavs** and so on to represent the equivalent of the English 'mine', 'yours', etc. They are declined like definite adjectives, and are marked for gender, number and case. They are usually found in the definite form:

mans	>	manējais
tavs	>	tavējais
viņa/viņas	>	viņējais
mūsu	>	mūsējais
jūsu	>	jūsējais
viņu	>	viņējais
savs	>	savējais

BIBLIOTECA GENERAL
UNIVERSIDAD NACIONAL

Bet diemžēl apkalpošanas līmenis Rīgas restorānās ne vienmēr atbilst cenām.

nav.

aidu tev atstāj šī vieta, salīdzinot

- ar Austrāliju?
Jūtos patikami pārsteigts par jauko apkalpošanu, un arī
par plašo viņu izvēli.
Vai oficiantiem ir pieņemts dot dzeramnaudu?

aksā, teiksim,

ina summas lielu dzeramādu,

- un šādos restorānos viņi gaida no klientiem apmēram to pašu.

A business dinner

peļnīta. Viesi apmeklē restorānus nevis, lai piedzertos, bet lai atpūstos, baudot labi gatavotus ēdienus un tiem atbilstošus dzērienus.

Vocabulary

tipisks	typical	uzņēmējs	businessman
restorāns	restaurant	apjēgt	realize
Kā pateikt?	What can I say?	skaidrs	clear
iedzīvotājs	inhabitant,	ieguldīt	invest
	resident	ceļot	travel
pusdienot	dine, have lunch	salīdzināt	compare
	(pusdienas	paradums	habit
	'lunch' from	izvēle	choice, selection
	pusdienu 'noon)	iespaids	impression
lielākoties	mostly	piedāvāt	offer
bagātnieks	rich man	oficiants	waiter
tūrists	tourist	pieņemt	accept, presume,
atšķirīgs	different		suppose
nollegt	deny	dzeramnauda	tip
ekonomisks	economic	procents	per cent
attiecība	proportion; (pl.)	rēķins	bill
	relations	summa	sum, total
ienest	bring (in)	pelnīt	earn, deserve
kultūra	culture	viesis	guest, visitor (pl.
censies	strive, try (pres.		viesi)
	censos)	apmeklēt	go to, visit
pievilkt	attract	piedzerties	get drunk
līmenis	level, standard	atpūsties	relax, rest
apkalpošana	service (apkalpot	baudīt	enjoy
	'serve')	gatavot	prepare
viesnīca	hotel	ēdiens	meal
vietējs	local		

Language points

Notes on word formation

There are many suffixes which can be added to the stems of Latvian words to create new meanings or shades of meaning, many of which we have already met. On page 126 above we saw, for example, how the suffix **-nieks/-niece** can be added to place-names to indicate their residents; the same suffix can be added to other words too:

bagātnieks	rich man
ārzemnieks	foreigner
rietumnieks	Westerner

and so on.

Another suffix we already know is **-šana**, which is added to active verb stems (note that it is **-šanas** with reflexive verbs) to form gerunds. Note the irregular form of **ēšana** 'eating', from **ēst** 'eat'.

From this same verb we also get **ēdiens** 'meal'.
Note also the word **vietējs** 'local', which is derived from **vieta** 'place' with the same ending as the possessive pronouns given above.

Exercise 3

Insert passive forms of the appropriate verb in parentheses in the present tense:

- 1 Jaunas ekonomiskās attiecības (ienest) Latvijā.
- 2 Tūristu nauda (pievilkt) mūsu zemē.
- 3 Augsta līmeņa apkalpošana (sagaidīt) no oficiantiem.
- 4 Abu valstu dzīves līmeņi (salīdzināt).
- 5 Dzeramnauda (pelnīt).
- 6 Labi ēdieni un dzērieni (baudīt).
- 7 Oficiants (pateikt).
- 8 Musu valoda šeit (saprast).

Language in action

Below is a menu from a good Riga restaurant. Study it, choose what you would like to order and tell the waiter what you and your friend(s) want, using the guidelines below. If you are working with a partner, one of you can play the waiter.

~ Ēdienu karte ~

UZKODAS

Sīpolu zupa

Jaukti lapu salāti ar mērci

Pildītas olas ar ķīniņām

Sīķe krējumā

GALVENĒJE ĒDIENI

Pildītas biezpiena pankūkas

Makaronu-siera saucpums

Cālis vīnā

Rīsu pilavs

Krāsni cepta šardīne

Speķa pīrādžiņi

SALDIE ĒDIENI

Cepiti āboli ar putu krējumu

Vaniļas pudīņš

Maģonmaizītes

Zemenes ar medu

Auģu torte

Svaigi auģi

Vaniļas saldējums

DZĒRIENI

Tēja, kafija

Citrona limonāde

Alus

Baltvīns

Sarkanvīns

Tell the waiter that you would like to start with the soup, or other starter, and choose something different for your friend. The waiter will then ask you what you would like as a main course.

Choose two different dishes; one for yourself and one for your friend. Ask if the vegetables are fresh.

The waiter will say they are quite fresh, but that he especially recommends the potatoes. Ask to see the wine list.

The waiter will show it to you. Choose one wine, but your friend prefers beer.

The waiter then asks if you want wine by the glass or bottle.

You decide to have a glass.

Later, the waiter asks if you want dessert or coffee. You only want coffee, but your friend only wants dessert.

Ask for the bill. The waiter gives it to you. Ask if this bill includes a service charge. He says it doesn't.

Thank him and pay cash. Wait for your change. (Leave a tip at your discretion.)

Reading passage

Interview with a businessman

Here is a newspaper interview, slightly abridged, with a young Latvian businessman about the problems of running a business in Latvia today. Notice that a few English business terms are used in their Latvian forms!

Kāds notikums, lēmums u.tml. (= un tam līdzīgi 'and so on') ietekmēja jūsu biznesu pagāšnedēļ?

Man pagāšnedēļ atkal iznāca raizēties par muitas lietām. Tā kā esam vācu automašīnu oficiālais dīleris Latvijā, mūsu pirmais uzdevums, protams, ir šīs preces nogādāšana pāri Latvijas robežai. Un te nu atkal kārtējo reizi² nācās pārliecināties, cik neracionāla un nepārdomāta ir kārtība, kā noformē, piemēram, automobiļu ieviešanu uz laiku. Tiek prasīts, lai šī prece vispirms tiek ievietota noliktavā, un tikai tad mēs varam ar to rīkoties tālāk pēc saviem ieskatiem.³ Iespējams, ka tik stingra kontrole citām precēm ir vajadzīga, bet automašīnām, manuprāt, tā jau ir vairākkārtīgi nodrošināta. Un galu galā⁴ mūsu valdībai vajadzētu tieši veicināt preču ieviešanu un izvešanu no Latvijas, ja patiesi gribam būt tranzīta zeme.

Kāds uzņēmums jums ir?

Mūsu firma ir kādas vācu automašīnu markas oficiālais dīleris Latvijā. Mēs pārdodam un apkalpojam automašīnas – gan jaunas, gan vecas. Piedāvājam pilnīgu servisu, lai pircējs mūsu automobili justos droši un ērti. Esam izvērsuši arī rezerves daļu tirdzniecību, remonējam automašīnas. Mūsu firmā nodarbināti 27 cilvēki.

Uzsākām savu darbību 1991. gadā, un nu jau diezgan droši varam teikt, ka šai jomā esam uzkrājuši vērtīgu pieredzi.

1 **Pagājsnedeļ:** short colloquial form of **pagājušajā nedēļā** 'last week'.

2 **Atkal kārtējo reizi:** 'once more, yet again'.

3 **Rīkotos tālāk pēc saviem ieskatiem:** 'go on acting at one's own discretion'.

4 **Galu galā:** 'in the end, after all'.

5 **Justos:** subjunctive of the reflexive verb **justies** 'feel'.

12 Sports

Sport

By the end of this lesson you should know more about:

- the superlative degree of the adjective
- names of countries and nationalities
- negating verbal participles
- verbs of becoming

Dialogue 1

Talking about sport

Jānis and his family, especially Imants, are keen sports fans in Australia, but in Latvia they find that different sports altogether are popular

IMANTS: Onkul, vai mēs varēsim apmeklēt kādu futbola spēli?

GUNĀRS: Varbūt būs iespēja, bet vai tu zini, kāds ir vismīlākais sporta veids šeit Latvijā?

IMANTS: Varbūt ledushokejs?

GUNĀRS: Nē, bet parasti to sauc vienkārši par hokeju Latvijā. Tas ir viens no ziemas sporta veidiem.

IMANTS: Teniss?

GUNĀRS: Arī tenisu labprāt spēlē, bet mūsu vismīlākais sporta veids ir basketbols.

IMANTS: Basketbols? Vai Latvijai ir slavena basketbola izlase?

GUNĀRS: Jā, mūsu komandas bieži spēlē Eiropas sacīkstēs. Nesen Latvijas komanda aizbrauca uz Spāniju, un vakar tur notika spēle.

IMANTS: Vai mūsu komanda uzvarēja?

GUNĀRS: Protams! Rezultāts bija 77:68 (septiņdesmit septiņi pret sešdesmit astoņi). Viņiem arī pērn bija tie paši pretinieki

– Spānija, vēl neuzvarētie Eiropas čempioni. Pirmais grozs iekrita tikai pēc pusotras minūtes.

IMANTS:
GUNĀRS:

Nē, viņi spēlēja Spānijā, un diemžēl spēli nepārraidīja televīzijā! Es par to lasīju avīzē. Bet vai tu gribi redzēt basketbola spēli?

IMANTS:
GUNĀRS:

Jā, jo basketbolu mēs spēlējam skolā Adelaidē. Labi! Rīt būs spēle šeit Rīgā, 'Brocēni' spēlēs pret komandu no Daugavpils.

Vocabulary

sports	Spānija	Spain
futbols	spēle	game
ledus	vakar	yesterday
hokejs	uzvarēt	win
	rezultāts	result
	pret	against; versus;
		towards (+ acc.)
	pretinieks	opponent
teniss	pērn	last year
basketbols	uzvarēt	defeat, overthrow
slavens	čempions	champion
izlase	grozs	basket
komanda	iekrist	fall in
bieži	lasīt	read
Eiropa	pārraidīt	broadcast
sacikstes	televīzija	television
(pl. only)		
aizbraukt		leave, depart

Language points

The superlative degree of the adjective

Kāds ir vismīļākais sporta veids šeit Latvijā?

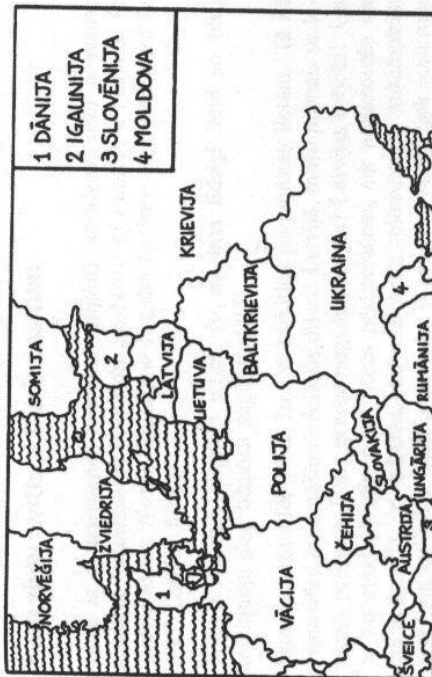
What is the most popular (= 'dearest') kind of sport here in Latvia?

We have already seen how the comparative ('more') form of the adjective is formed by adding the syllable **-āk-** to the stem: **ilgs**

'long', **ilgāks** 'longer'; **dārgs** 'dear', **dārgāks** 'dearer' and so on. The superlative ('most') form of the adjective is formed by adding the prefix **vis-** to this comparative form. But note that the superlative form must always have the *definite* adjectival ending: **vismīļākais** 'the most popular' (or: **vispopulārākais**).

Countries and nationalities

We already know that all place-names are feminine in Latvian. This applies just as much to the names of countries. Here is a list of some of the countries more familiar to Latvians. The names of the nationalities are generally formed along the pattern of **latvietis** (m.), **latviete** (f.; note the lower-case initial!).



Igaunija	Estonia	igauņis, igauņiete	Estonian
Lietuva	Lithuania	lietuvietis, lietuviete	Lithuanian
Somija	Finland	soms, somiete	Finn
Zviedrija	Sweden	zviedrs, zviedriete	Swede
Dānija	Denmark	dānis, dāniete	Dane
Norvēģija	Norway	norvēģis, norvēģiete	Norwegian
Krievija	Russia	krievs, krieviete	Russian
Baltkrievija	Belarus		
Lielbritānija	Great Britain		
Vācija	Germany		
Francija	France		

Itālija	Italy
Spānija	Spain
Čehija	Czech Republic
Ungārija	Hungary
Polija	Poland
Amerikas	The United States of America
Savienotās Valstis	
Kanāda	Canada
Ukraina	Ukraine
Turcija	Turkey
Kīna	China
Japāna	Japan
Dienvidāfrika	South Africa

Names of languages are formed from the *genitive plural* of the masculine form of the nationality name: **zviedru valoda, igauņu valoda, krievu valoda** and so on.

The names of the continents are: **Eiropa, Āzija, Āfrika, Ziemeļamerika, Dienvidamerika**.

Negating verbal participles, definite and indefinite

Gunārs commented to Imants that the Latvian team's opponents in Spain were

vēl neuzvarētie Eiropas čempioni
the still unbeaten champions of Europe

Just as in English we can negate the participle 'beaten' with the prefix 'un-', so in Latvian we can do the same by adding the usual negative prefix **ne-** to the participle **gāzt** 'beaten'. But we can also make participles definite, just like any other adjective: **neuzvarētie čempioni** 'the unbeaten champions'.

Exercise 1

Fill in the rest of the table of countries and nationalities above, according to the patterns you can find.

Exercise 2

Translate into Latvian:

- 1 Many Latvians live in Canada, the United States, Australia, Great Britain and elsewhere, but of course most Latvians live in Latvia.
- 2 Estonia and Lithuania are our closest neighbours (say: 'neighbour-countries').
- 3 Northern Africa is the hottest part of the world.
- 4 What is the most popular kind of sport in Spain?
- 5 The Finns played against the Swedes yesterday, and the Finns definitely had the best team.
- 6 Some of my dearest friends live in Denmark.
- 7 I have travelled abroad several times, most often to Russia, Belarus and Estonia.
- 8 Until this year the Russians had the best team – they were the unbeaten champions of Europe.

Dialogue 2

A basketball match

The next day, Gunārs takes Imants to watch a basketball game, while the rest of the family, who aren't so interested in sport, are enjoying a day on the beach at Jūrmala

GUNĀRS: Šodien, Imant, mūsu puīšu pretinieki ir viena no spēcīgākajiem Latvijas komandām, Daugavpils komandam. Vai tu redzi to vīru, ar bumbu rokā?

IMANTS: No Daugavpils komandas, jā?

GUNĀRS: Jā, tieši viņš. Viņš ir viens no ātrākajiem spēlētājiem komandā. Redzi, kā viņš skrien uz grozu un iemet bumbu! Divi punkti!

IMANTS: Bet aiz viņa muguras stāv kāds garš Brocēnu spēlētājs, kas – nu, onkul, re! Viņš skrien prom ar bumbu –

GUNĀRS: – un ir jau uz mūsu soda metienu līnijas. Kas cīnās ar bumbu tagad? Jā! Arī viņiem divi punkti! Neizskirts: viens pret vienu. Bet nu – bumba ir atkal musējo rokās! Tā ir pārtverta! Bloķēts metiens!

IMANTS: Un tagad viņi atkal uzbruka, skaties, onkul!

GUNĀRS: Jā! Precīza piespēle, labi! Nu, Imant, vai šī spēle nav tikpat satraucoša kā jūsu futbols?

IMANTS:

Jā, un vēl ātrāka! Onkul, vai tu domā, ka es izaugšu pietiekami garš, lai varētu spēlēt basketbolu?
 GUNĀRS: Droši vien – bet nu, ā! Tieši grozā, tieši pirms puslaika pārtraukuma! Domāju, ka mūsu puīši uzvarēs!

Vocabulary

spēcīgs	strong, powerful	neizšķirts	undecided; equal
bumba	ball	atkal	score
tieši	just, exactly	pārtvert	again
ātrs	quick, fast	bloķēt	intercept
spēlētājs	player	uzbrukt	block
iemest	throw in (pres.)	precīzs	attack
punkts	iemet	piespēle	precise, accurate
re!	point	tikpat	serve
prom/projām	look!	satraukt	just as
sods	away	drošs	excite (pres. satrauc)
metiens	penalty	tikko	certain, sure; bold;
līnija	throw (n.)	puslaiks	(droši vien 'probably, surely')
cīnīties	line		(also) just, hardly
	struggle, fight		half-time
	(pres. cīnās)		

Language points

Verbs of becoming

Verbs which indicate a change of state, such as **tikt**, **kļūt** and **augt**, for example, may simply take the nominative form of the adjective which indicates the changed state. For example, Imants asked his uncle:

Vai tu domā, ka es izaugšu pietiekami garš, lai varētu spēlēt basketbolu?

Do you think I'll grow tall enough to be able to play basketball? But when the change of state is indicated by a noun, then we require the preposition **par** followed, as always, by the accusative. For instance, Imants could have asked:

Vai tu domā, ka es kļūšu par basketbola spēlētāju?
 Do you think I'll become a basketball player?

Exercise 3

Translate the following football commentary into Latvian. New words are given in parentheses:

The first half ended unexpectedly in the match (**mačs**) between 'Gemma' and 'Olimpija' – after an 11 metre penalty kick (**sitiens**) by Krēslīņš, 'Gemma' found themselves with a 1:0 lead (**vadība**). Only on the sixty-third minute did Kārkliņš achieve 1:1, and only in the last ten minutes did Andersons make it a 3:1 victory in favour (**labā**) of 'Olimpija' with two goals (**vārti** or **gols**).

Reading passage

Ādažos lūst' grozi

Here is a brief report of a basketball game from a newspaper (Labrīt, 15 October 1994, p.8). Ādaži is a small town in northern Latvia

Tikai divas nedēļas risinās Latvijas Junioru līgas čempionāta spēles, bet kas gan tajās nav noticis! Raug,² ceturtdien kārtas centrālajā mačā starp 'Metropoli' un 'Dumli' gadījās Latvijas basketbola vēsturē sen nebijis notikums. Ādažnieks Uvis Helmanis, kurš pēc pagājušās sezonas savu svaru palielinājis vēl par vairākiem kilogramiem, iesildoties bija nodomājis ietriekt bumbu grozā no augšas.³ Helmanis izturēja, bet grozs izjuka ... Ādažu sporta nama gaitenīšos neviena rezervē nolikta ķoča⁴ nebija, un abām komandām roku rokā bija jābrauc uz Rīgu, uz Sporta pili. Nu jau laukuma saimnieku lomā iejutās⁵ 'Dumle', kas čempionāta līderu mačā nebūt nav mazsvarīgi. Nez kā⁶ tagad lens līgas vadoni, bet, pēc iepriekšsastādītā⁷ kalendāra, arī otrā aplā 'Dumles' un 'Metropoles' mačam jānotiek Sporta pilī.

1 Lūst: present tense of *lūst* 'break'.

2 Rau(g): 'look, see'.

3 No augšas: 'from above'.

4 Ķoča: 'basket'.

5 Iejutās: past tense of *iejusties* 'fit oneself into'.

6 Nez(in) kā: 'who knows how'.

7 Pēc iepriekšsastādītā: 'according to the previously compiled'.

13 Brauciens ar riteni

A bicycle trip

By the end of this lesson you should know more about:

- comparison of adverbs
- verb participles
- Latvian road signs

Dialogue 1

By bicycle to the beach

One sunny day Jānis and Baiba decide to take the children for a bicycle trip out of Riga on bicycles they have borrowed from Gunārs and Aija for the day

- JĀNIS: Baiba! Bērni! Brauksim uz Jūrmalu ar riteniem, ko tēvocis un krustmāte ir mums atlāvuši nemt, kamēr viņi ir darbā!
- BAIBA: Bet, Jāni, vai mēs vienā dienā paspēsim aizbraukt turp un atpakaļ?
- JĀNIS: Protams! Atceros, ka savā bērnībā es bieži braucu no pilsētas uz Majoriem.
- IMANTS: Jā, bet tēti, tavā bērnībā satiksme vēl nebija tik bieža, kā tagad!
- BAIBA: Un gaisa tagad ir daudz vairāk piesārņots.
- JĀNIS: Bet paskaties uz karti! Jūrmala nemaz nav tik tālu, un ceļš uz turieni ir taisns un, cik es atceros, līdzens.
- DZIDRA: Labi! Brauksim, un redzēsim, cik tālu mēs paspēsim!
- JĀNIS: Bet brauksim lēnām un uzmanīgi! Jūs, bērni, katru dienu braucat uz skolu ar velosipēdu, bet diemžēl mana darba vieta atrodas pārāk tālu, lai varētu braukt ar divriteni.

BAIBA: Tātad šeit Rīgā, kur mums ir daudz laika un iespēju, var rūpēties par savu veselību. Un atcerieties: ar divriteni braukdams, jāievēro visi satiksmes noteikumi.

Vocabulary

ritenis (divritenis, bicycle velosipēds)	bērniība	childhood
Jūrmala	Majori	resort near Jūrmala
	tētis	dad, daddy
	piesārņot	pollute
	taisns	straight
krustmāte	līdzens	flat, level
	formally:	careful, attentive
	tante	take care (of), look (after)
atļaut	atļauj, past	observe
	atlāva	rule, regulation
turp	there, thither	
	ievērot	
	noteikums	

Language points

Gender in past participles

Jānis mentioned to the children that the bicycles (**divritenis**, pl. **divriteni**, or **velosipēdi** as he called them), were lent to them by their uncle and aunt:

ko tēvocis un krustmāte mums ir atlāvuši.

Where the subject of the verbal participle is plural but of different genders, the *masculine plural* ending is used (**atlāvuši**).

The present active participle -dams

We already know the form of the present active participle of the verb (-ošs) which can be used adjectivally. A different participle, however, is needed when the subject of a verb in a main clause is also the subject of a subordinate clause. Consider this example in English:

Walking in the street, I spotted a familiar face.

The sentence consists of two clauses (two verb phrases), but the subject of both verbs is the same: 'I'. In such a case we use the special form ending in **-dams** in Latvian:

Iedams pa ielu, es ieraudzīju pazīstamu seju.

This participle is variable according to gender and number, but not according to case: it can only ever occur as a nominative, by reason of its function.

Pie galdā sēdēdami/sēdēdamas, mēs sākam ēst.

Sitting (m./f.) at the table, we began to eat.

Dialogue 2

The environment

As in many other countries, the Kalējs family has noticed a big difference in the quality of the air and the environment generally in the capital city and the rural areas they have seen. Jānis and Baiba take up the subject with Gunārs and Aija after their bicycle trip

BAIBA: Kad mēs braucām šodien ar riteniem, mums šķita, ka Rīgas gaiss ir diezgan netīrs. Vai tas ir tā piesārņots pēdējā laikā?

GUNĀRS: Nu, padomju laikā mūsu vide bija vēl netīrāka. Sevišķi lielās rūpnīcas izlaida bīstamas, neapstrādātas vielas tieši gaisā. Tagad vairāk rūpējas, lai izvairītos no šādām briesmām, un piesārņojums tiek kontrolēts un samazināts. Bet tomēr pilsētas ceļu satiksme ir strauji pieaugusi, un tādēļ mums ir jaunas vides problēmas. Dienā tikai nesen latvieši sāka apzināties vides aizsardzības neatliekamību.

BAIBA: Bet par laimi Latvijā lielākoties ir vieglā rūpniecība – protams izņemot Rīgu. Un laukos vide ir samērā tīra.

AJA: Jā, bet citur Latvijā ir citas vides problēmas. Piemēram upēs ir ieplūdinātas neapstrādātas rūpnieciskās vielas –

GUNĀRS: Man šķiet, ka vispār Latvijas vide tagad vairs nav apdraudēta vairāk, nekā citās Eiropas zemēs, varbūt pat mazāk. Un vides aizsardzība jāveic mūsdienā pasaulē tik dažādos veidos.

AJA: Aizsardzība no kā?

GUNĀRS: No masveida tūrisma sekām, no rūpniecības izaugsmes, no jaunu ceļu būvēšanas un vēl daudziem citiem draudiem.

Vocabulary

netīrs	dirty	aizsardzība	protection
rūpniecība	works, factory, plant	neatliekamība	urgency (atlikt 'postpone')
izlaist	emit, release (pres. izlaiž, past izlaida)	izņemt	excepting (izņemt 'take out')
apstrādāt	process, treat	ieplūdināt	flow in
bīstams	dangerous	rūpnieciskās	industrial
viela	substance	apdraudēt	endanger
izvairīties	avoid, avert	mūsdienas	modern, 'of our day'
briesmas (pl.)	danger	masveida	mass
kontrolēt	check, monitor, control	tūrisms	tourism
samazināt	decrease, reduce	sekas (pl.)	consequence, result
pieaugt (intr.)	increase	izaugsme	growth, development
problēma	problem		
apzināties	be aware	draudi (pl.)	threat, menace

Language points

Comparison of adverbs

Gunārs remarked that it seemed to him that:

vispār Latvijas vide tagad vairs nav apdraudēta vairāk, kā citās Eiropas zemēs, varbūt pat mazāk.

In general the environment in Latvia is now no more threatened than in other European countries, maybe even less.

In the comparative and superlative degrees, adverbs take no ending other than the comparative suffix **-āk**, which we already know. Thus we get:

vairāk apdraudēta	more threatened
visvairāk apdraudēta	most threatened

mazāk attīstīts less developed
vismazāk attīstīts least developed

and so on. (Note that 'than' is *nekā* in a positive statement but *kā* in a negative one.)

Exercise 1

- 1 Give the past active participles of the following verbs in four forms: masculine and feminine, singular and plural: **nākt**; **kļiegt**; **braukt**; **skatīt**; **pirkt**; **izmantot**.
- 2 Give the present active participles of the same verbs in the same four forms.

Exercise 2

Insert the appropriate forms of the verbs given in parentheses in this paraphrase of the dialogue you have just read.

Baiba (past tense of **teikt**), ka braucienā viņiem (**šķiet**), ka Rīgas gaiss (**būt**) netīrs. Viņa (**jautāt**), vai tas pēdējos gados tiek (**piesārņot**), Gunārs (**paskaidrot**), ka kaut gan pašlaik rūpnīcas (**neizjaist**) tik daudz (**neapstrādāt**) vielu kā padomju laikos, tomēr ceļa satiksme Latvijas galvas pilsētā strauji (**pieaugt**), un tādēļ tagad (**jā + cīnīties**) ar jaunām vides problēmām. Aija (**piebilst**), ka tikai nesen latvieši ir (**sākt apzināties**) par vides aizsardzības neatliekamību. Un ir vēl daudz, par ko (**jā + rūpēties**). Upēs vēl šodien (**tiklī ieplūdinātas**) rūpniecības vielas, un vide (**jā + aizsargāt**) pret daudzām briesmām draudiem. Tomēr Gunārs (**ticēt**), ka Latvijas vidi šādas briesmas (**neapdraudēt**) vairāk, kā citur Eiropā.

Exercise 3

Translate into Latvian:

- 1 Road traffic in the capital city is growing ever more rapidly.
- 2 Industrial substances are being released into the river.
- 3 Latvia is only a small country, and that is why it must be protected.
- 4 The children were unable to get all the way from here to Dubulti by bicycle.
- 5 In Soviet times people were unaware of the importance of environmental protection.

- 6 Nowadays people take more care of their health.
- 7 Travelling by bicycle, they crossed the Daugava by the Vanšu bridge.
- 8 Looking to the right, I saw two cars coming towards me. (Note word order here!)

Exercise 4

What do these Latvian proverbs mean? Look up the Glossary for additional vocabulary.

- 1 Savā acī balķi neredz, cita acī skabargu redz.
- 2 Kas citam bedri rok,¹ pats tajā iekrīt.
- 3 Dod, Dieviņi, otram dot, ne no otra mīļi lūgt.
- 4 Bagāta maize grūti pelnāma.
- 5 Māki vārdu, zini ceļu.
- 6 Ja dibens niez, Rīgā būs lēts sviests.
- 7 Jo resnāka cūka, jo mazāk laimes.
- 8 Kā tev klājas? Dievs milē, velns neatstājas.
- 9 Ja zaki pa ziemu nāk mājās, tad bagāta vasara gaidāma.
- 10 Ko līdz lieli gurķi, kad tukši vidi.
- 11 Katram savs graustiņš mīļš!
- 12 Zirgu tur pie pavadas, viru pie vārda.
- 1 Third person singular present tense of *rakt*.

Language in action

Match these Latvian road signs to their descriptions, which are given in alphabetical order.

- | | | | |
|-------------------------------|--|---------|--|
| Autoosta | Braukšanas ātruma ierobežojumi | Latvijā | (ātrums 'speed'; ierobežojums 'limit') |
| Cela numurs | (numurs 'number') | | |
| Ceļu policija | | | |
| Darbadienas | | | |
| Dzelzeļa stacija | | | |
| Gājēju maršruta sākums | (gājējs 'walker, hiker') | | |
| Iepriekšējs virzienu rādītājs | (advance direction indicator, virziens 'direction') | | |
| Jauniešu tūristu mītne | ('youth hostel'; jauniešis 'youth, young person'; mītne 'hostel, accommodation') | | |

Jostas sākums (josta 'belt, zone'; here 'lane')
Kafejnīca

Lidosta

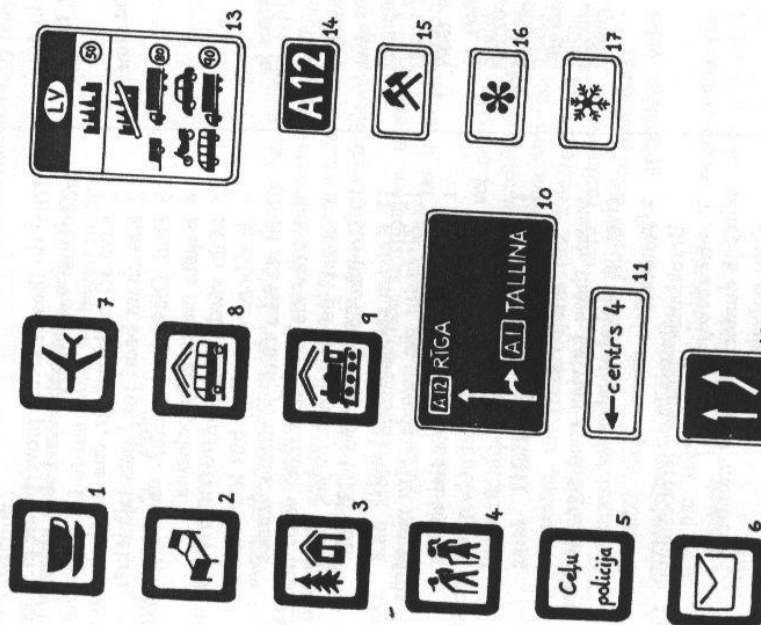
Pasts (post office)

Sestdienās, svētdienās un svētku dienās

Viesnīca vai motelis

Virzienu rādītājs

Ziemā



Note: LV is the international code for vehicles from Latvia. It is also the prefix in Latvian postcodes.

14 Pusdienas

A dinner

By the end of this lesson you should know more about:

- Latvian food and cooking
- the prefix **pa-**
- adjectives in relation to nouns

Dialogue 1

Preparing dinner

One evening, Aija decides to cook a meal of Latvian delicacies, as Ivars and Dace are visiting from the country again

AIA: Šodien es jums pagatavošu dažus ēdienus, kas īpaši patīk Ivaram un Dacei, jo viņi atbrauks pie mums ciemos.

BAIBA: Un droši vien atvedīs svaigus dārzeņus.

AIA: Mums sevišķi garšo kartupeļu pankūkas.

BAIBA: Arī pie mums es bieži gatavoju tradicionālus latviešu ēdienus.

ĢUNĀRS: Man vislabāk garšo kartupeļu saņemums ar krējumu un ikrēm.

AIA: Labi! No svaigajiem kartupeļiem es gatavošu abus ēdienus.

BAIBA: Manas pankūkas bieži vien iznāk pacietas. Nezinu kāpēc.

AIA: Nu, es tev parādišu, kā es tās gatavoju. Sarīvētiem kartupeļiem nospiež mazliet sulas, bet masai pievieno olu un karoti krējuma, un tad cepums nebus pārāk ciets, bet būs gana mīksts. Bet nu, gatavosim ēdienus kopā.

DZIDRA: Mmm, smaržo brīnišķīgi!

AIA: Jā, mēs vienmēr baudām tos svaigos dārzeņus, ko atnes

Dace un Ivars. Bet katru nedēļu es eju arī uz Rīgas Centrālirgu, lai pirktu tos ēdienus, kas mums patīk un kas nav pārāk dārgi, piemēram zivis un sieru un varbūt arī šķēpi.

BAIBA: Bet jūs laikam ejat arī sēņot un ogot!

GUNĀRS: Protams! Augustā un septembrī mēs ejam katru nedēļu, sestdien vai svētdien, uz meži ar groziem un lasām sēnes vai ogas līdz pat vakaram.

BAIBA: Vai līdz tam brīdim, kad vairs nav vietu grozos.

JĀNIS: Redzu šeit virtuvē, ka tu pati vāri ievārījumus.

BAIBA: Jā, jo paštaisītais vienmēr garšo vislabāk. Un dažreiz, kad man ir laiks, es cepu arī kūkas, maizi un maizītes.

Vocabulary

svaigs	fresh	masa	mass, paste
dārzeņi	vegetables	gana = diezgan	
pankūka	pancake	mīksts	soft
tradicionāls	traditional	smaržot	smell
sacepums	baked food (kartupeļu sacepums)		(pleasantly), be fragrant
		iknedēļ	every week
krējums	'shepherd's pie'	Centrālirgus	Central Market
	cream (usually sour cream)	zivs (f.)	fish (declined like goats)
ikri	roe, caviar	speķis	bacon
paciets	hardish (cietis 'hard')	sēņot	pick mushrooms
sarīvēt	grate	ogot	pick berries
nospiest	crush, press (out)	lasīt	pick

Language points

The adjectival prefix pa-

Manas pankūkas bieži vien iznāk paciētas.

My pancakes quite often turn out hardish.

The prefix **pa-**, when added to adjectives, tends to lessen the intensity of the meaning. It thus has much the same effect as the suffix

·ish' when added to English adjectives. Thus while **cietis** means 'hard', **paciēts** is only 'a bit hard, hardish'. Likewise: **pavēls** 'latish, rather late', **pagars** 'longish', **pabargs** 'rather severe', **pakurls** 'hard of hearing' (from **kurls** 'deaf') and many others.

The effect is much the same when the same prefix is added to verbs. This gives the verb a sense of momentariness. In the dialogue Aija used the expression **es tev parādīšu** 'I'll show you' (from **rādīt** 'show'). Likewise **pagaidīt** 'wait a moment'; **pastāstīt** 'tell (briefly)'; **pasmaidīt** 'smile (a bit)'. But do not assume that **pa-** always has this effect; sometimes it creates an entirely different meaning to the basic verb: for example **sūtīt** means 'send', but **pasūtīt** means 'order (to be sent)'; **stāvēt** means 'stand', but **pastāvēt** 'exist' (also 'stand for a while'); **tikt** 'get, become' (formerly 'like'), but **patikt** 'please'.

Adjectives when not in apposition to nouns

When an adjective is separated from the noun to which it refers by a verb or other sentence element, it retains its agreement in number, gender and case with that noun. Look again at the example on page 148 above:

Manas pankūkas bieži vien iznāk paciētas.

Paciētas refers to **pankūkas**, so it takes the feminine nominative plural form. Similarly we might say:

Kad zēns kļuvis liels, viņš būs slavens rakstnieks.

When the boy grows big, he will be a famous writer.

This is a straightforward rule of agreement. But what if the verb that separates an adjective from its noun is transitive and implies a change of state? Then the same basic rule applies, but if the noun changes its case then the adjective changes accordingly, even if separated by a whole clause or several phrases. In the recipes given below, pay particular attention to the rather unusual word order. We'll return to the subject of adjective agreement after you have read and understood them.

Recipes

These are the two recipes they make. When you have understood them, you might like to try making them yourself.

Kartupeļu sacepums ar krējumu un ikrēm

Lielu kartupeli nomizo un sarīvē uz rupjas rīves vai arī sagriež loņi plānās sloksnītēs. Pieliek mazliet sāls un piparu. Gatavo masu liek uz pannas sakarsētā eļļā, izlīdzina un cep no abām pusēm brūnu, karofīti melno ikru. Kartupeļu sacepumu var ēst arī ar skābāku ievārījumu, sēņu vai kādu citu mērci.

1 infinitive: pārīst.

Marinēta siļķe ar kartupeli

Siļķi nomērcē, notīra, sagriež slīpos gabaliņos. Sīpolus sagriež etiķa un eļļas maisījumā, kam pievienotas lauru lapas, cukurs un pipari, un marinē siļķi vismaz divas stundas.

Siļķi pasniedz kopā ar folijā ceptu kartupeli. Paprāvu nomizotu kartupeli ieliek folijā, virsū uzliek naža galu sviesta. Cep cepeškrāsnī, kamēr gatavs. Izcepto kartupeli vidū iešķel uz pusēm, pilda ar skābu krējumu un uzkaisa dilles. Pasniedz kopā ar siļķi kā karsto uzkodu.

1 infinitive: aizīst.

Language points

More about agreement of nouns and adjectives

Returning to the discussion of noun and adjective agreement on page 149 above, you may have noticed a couple of interesting examples in the recipes given above. In the first recipe, look again at the sentence:

Gatavo masu liek uz pannas sakarsētā eļļā, izlīdzina un cep no abām pusēm brūnu.

Put the prepared mixture into a pan in heated oil, smooth out and fry on both sides (until) brown.

In Latvian we say literally 'fry on both sides brown', and the word 'brown' (*brūnu*) is accusative, as it refers to the mixture (*masu*, acc.) which is the object of the verb *cept* 'fry'.

Further, look at the last sentence in the second recipe:

Pasniedz kopā ar siļķi kā karsto uzkodu.

Serve together with the herring as a ('the') hot snack.

Here, *uzkodū* 'snack' is in the accusative because it is the object of *pasniedz* 'serve' ('serve it' is understood, as it would be in an English-language recipe).

Remember that with some verbs, the adverbial form of the adjective is appropriate – especially verbs describing states of feeling or existence:

Vīņiem klājas labi. They are doing well.
Es jūtos slikti. I feel bad.

Vīss bija labi.
Everything was good. (or: 'It was all good'.)

Exercise 1

The vocabulary you need for these two recipes you will find in the Glossary at the back of the book. No list of ingredients was given before each of the recipes: can you write out the lists yourself?

Exercise 2

In both of the recipes the instructions contained quite a lot of verbs, some of them quite irregular. You will find all the clues you need in the vocabulary and verb tables at the back of the book to make a list of all the verbs in the recipes in their infinitive (dictionary) form. Include the verbs that occur here in participial form.

Exercise 3

Translate into Latvian:

- 1 We have always tried to live comfortably.
- 2 However, only recently has our life become comfortable.
- 3 Everything on the table looks so good.
- 4 Make all the pancakes thin.
- 5 I arrived at their place as an unexpected guest.
- 6 She treated me as an uninvited guest.
- 7 I like my beer cold. (Note: remember what to say for 'I like')
- 8 Wash the herrings clean.

Reading passage

Here is another one of the ancient Latvian *dainas*. Additional vocabulary can be found in the Glossary

Rīt, rīt, Mēnesi,
Vārpiņus vērt!
Nu brauca Saulei
Trejādi viesi:
Brauc tēvs, brauc māte,
Brauc bāleliņi,
Brauc mazas māsiņas
Kā magoniķes,
Brauc mazi brālīši
Kā ozoliņi.

15 Brauciens gar krastu

A trip along the coast

By the end of this lesson you should know more about:

- prepositions and their uses
- the relative mood: reported speech
- letter-writing
- verbs governing the dative case
- 'need' and 'ought' in Latvian

Dialogue 1

By car to the coast

The Kalejs family's stay in Latvia will soon be over, and they don't feel they have seen enough of the country yet. So on their final weekend in Latvia, Gunārs offers to take them on a car trip along parts of the extensive Latvian coast

GUNĀRS: Rīt brauksim ar mašīnu gar Vidzemes jūrmalu. Jūs vēl neesat redzējuši mūsu skaisto jūras krastu. Es domāju, ka parīt, ja būs labs laiks, varēsim aizbraukt arī uz Kurzemes jūrmalu. Kā jūs domājat?

IMANTS: Jā, es labprāt gribētu pacelt ar mašīnu!

BAIBA: Žēl, ka tik daudz paliek vēl neapskatīts! Piemēram, gribētos redzēt Gaujas nacionālo parku.

GUNĀRS: Nu, tas atrodas Siguldas apkārtnē. Pa ceļam uz Siguldu mēs varēsim apstāties pie restorāna 'Sēnīte' ap pusdienu laiku, un no turienes –

DZIDRA: Parādi man uz kartes, lūdzu, kur tā atrodas!

GUNĀRS: Šeit atrodas Sigulda, redzi? Vārbūt ņemsim savas pusdienas līdzi. Un no turienes brauksim caur Parku uz Cēsim, tad uz Limbažiem.

JĀNIS:

Un pēc tam pa šoseju 'Via Baltica' līdz Salacgrīvai.
Varbūt spēsīm aizbraukt līdz pat Igaunijas robežai, vai nē?

BAIBA:

Šī vieta vēl nebija parks, kad es biju jauna.

AJA:

Nē, tikai pirms divdesmit gadiem tas kļuva par parku.
Tad tika nolemts, ka Gaujas upes apkārtnē ir jāsaudzē,
jo tās daba ir ļoti skaista.

GUNĀRS:

Siguldā ir veca pils, kas droši vien tev interesēs, Jāni.

JĀNIS:

Jā, un Turaidu es ļoti gribētu redzēt; tas esot sens lībiešu
ciemats.

DZIDRA:

Kas ir lībieši?

GUNĀRS:

Lībieši ir ļoti veca somugru tauta, kas esot apdzīvojuši
Latviju jau pirms latviešiem. Viņu pēcteči vēl dzīvoja
dažos zvejnieku ciemos Kurzemes krastā, līdz pat mūsu
dienām, bet viņu palicis ir ļoti maz.

DZIDRA:

Bet ko nozīmē 'somugru tauta'? Vai viņi ir somu
radnieki?

GUNĀRS:

Jā, somu un arī igauņu radnieki. Viņu valoda esot ļoti
līdzīga igauņu valodai.

JĀNIS:

Un vai mēs varēsim braukt atpakaļ pa citu ceļu?

GUNĀRS:

Jā, protams, piemēram, gar krastu caur Saulkrastiem, kas
arī ir ļoti skaista un interesanta vieta.

DZIDRA:

Tad brauksim agri no rīta, tūlīt pēc brokastīm!

Vocabulary

gar (+ acc.)	along	saudzēt	protect
parīt	the day after	daba	nature
	tomorrow	lībietis	Livonian
pacelot	travel, go on a	ciemats	settlement, village
	trip	somugru	Finno-Ugrian
žēl	(it's a) pity		(soms 'Finn')
nacionāls	national	apdzīvot	inhabit
apstāties	stop (off)	pētecis	descendant
šoseja	highway	zvejnieks	fisherman
pirms (+ gen.)	before; ago	ciems	village
kļūt (+ par)	become	vairs	any longer (with
before nouns)			ne: 'no longer')
nolēmt	decide	igauņi	Estonian
apkārtnē	surroundings,	līdzīgs	similar, like
	vicinity	caur (+ acc.)	through

Language points

Prepositions

In the dialogue above we met three new prepositions: **caur**, **pirms** and **gar**. We have by now learned virtually all of the Latvian prepositions, so let us list them all here, with an indication of what cases they govern. (Don't forget that in the plural, all prepositions govern the dative case.) Approximate renderings of their meanings are listed here too, but Latvian prepositions do not have exact equivalents in English.

Preposition	Case governed	Approximate meaning
aiz	gen.	behind, due to
ap	acc.	about, around
apakš	gen.	below, under
ar	acc.	with, by means of
ārpus	gen.	outside
augšpus	gen.	above
bez	gen.	without
caur	acc.	through
gar	acc.	along
iekšpus	gen.	inside
kopš	gen.	since
leļpus	gen.	down from
līdz	gen.	until, up to
no	dat.	from, out of
otrpus	dat.	on the other side of
pa	acc.	through, along
par	acc.	for, as
pār	acc.	across, over
pēc	gen.	after, according to
pie	gen.	at (the place of)
pirms	gen.	since, ago
pret	acc.	against, towards
priekš	dat.	before, for
starp	acc.	between, among
šai pus	dat.	on this side of
uz	gen.	on
	acc.	to, until
vinpus	acc.	opposite
virš	gen.	above
zem	gen.	below

There are also two *postpositions* (placed after the noun); *dēļ* 'because of' and *labad* 'for the sake of', both taking the genitive.

Gender in subjectless clauses

Tad tika nolemts, ka Gaujas upes apkārtnē ir jāsaudzē.

It was decided that the Gauja river area must be protected. We have already met subjectless clauses in Latvian: cases where we would use a non-specific 'it' in English. Very often, as in this example, they involve a passive construction. Where the passive participle has no subject to refer to, it appears in the *masculine* gender (*nolemts*).

The relative mood and its tenses

In the dialogue, Gunārs said that:

Lībieši ir ļoti veca somugru tauta, kas esot apdzīvojusi Latviju jau pirms latviešiem.

The Livonians are a very ancient Finno-Ugrian people, who are supposed to have inhabited Latvia even before the Latvians. Later, he said:

-Viņu valoda esot ļoti līdzīga igauņu valodai.

Their language is said to be very similar to Estonian.

The form of the verb used here is called the *relative mood*, because it is used for 'relating' what is only hearsay in the speaker's view; it is 'non-committal', suspending belief. It only has one ending for all persons: *-ot*, which is added to the present tense stem:

Viņi ejot uz veikalu.

They are supposed to be going to the shop.

Viņa skrītenot ātrāk nekā viņas māsa.

They say she runs faster than her sister.

Pils esot ļoti veca.

The castle is supposed to be very old.

There is no simple past tense of the relative mood; instead we use a perfect tense with *esot*:

Tu esot pirkusi jaunas drēbes, Māra.

They say you've bought new clothes, Māra.

Runā, ka Vilis esot bijis ārzemēs.

They say that Vilis has been abroad.

There is a future tense of the relative mood, formed with *-šot* added to the future stem:

Pie mums nāksot jauns ārsts.

A new (*or*: A young) doctor is said to be going to come to us.

Pēc saraksta, drīz pienāksot vilciens.

According to the timetable, a train is supposed to come soon.

Māte mums aizlīdzta iet ārā, jo līsot lietus.

Mother forbade us to go out, because it will rain (she says).

A letter home

After a tour of the Kurzeme coast some days later, Baiba writes a letter to a Latvian friend back in Australia

Dargā Biruta!

Mūsu atvaļinājums šeit Latvijā ir gandrīz beidzies. Mums ar bērniem tas ir bijis brīnišķīgs piedzīvojums. Tev vajadzētu braukt uz Latviju, kā tu bieži esi apsoltījusi, lai ar savām acīm redzētu, cik daudz šī zeme ir pārmainījies, kopš tu to pēdējo reizi redzēji.

Sodien mēs visi braucām ar mana svaigā mašīnu gar Kurzemes krastu. Protams vienā dienā nepaspēj visu krastu redzēt, bet mēs redzējām vismaz visa Rīgas līča krastu, līdz pat Kolkaš ragam.

Vai tu atceries Kuldfīgu no savas jaunības? Tu to pazītu vēl šodien, jo tā ir vēl tā pati pilsētiņa, ko es atceros, Ventas krastā. Sevišķi tās baznīcas ir ļoti iespaidīgas. Ja būtu vairāk laika, gribētos veikt braucieni ar laiviņu līdz Ventspilij. Bet mēs sekojām krasta ceļam, nevis Ventai. Visa krasta garumā ir jauka jūrmala ar smalkām smiltīm. Braucām gar Engures ezeru, uz Roju, kur pieturējām, lai ieeistu brīvā dabā. Turpinājām līdz Kolkaš ragam, un atpakaļceļā mēs braucām caur Dundagu, kur apmeklējām veco pili, un Talsiem, Kandavu un Tukumu.

Bet drīz varēšu pati tev pastāstīt par visu redzēto un piedzīvoto, jo nākamnedēļ lidosim atpakaļ uz Adelaidi. Dienzēl šoreiz mums nebija laika redzēt Ventspili un Liepāju Kurzemes braucienā, bet lai tas paliek uz nākamo reizi!

Visu labu jums visiem novēlē

Baiba un Jānis

Vocabulary

beigties	end	sekot (+ dat.)	follow
piedzīvojums	adventure	garums	length (garš
vajadzēt	need	jūrmala	'long')
pārmainības	change, be transformed	smalks	seashore (comp. Jūrmala, Rīga
svainis	brother-in-law	smiltis (f.)	seaside resort)
licis	bay, gulf	ezers	fine
ragi	horn; antler;	pastāstīt	sand (usually pl., smiltis)
pazīt	promontory	nākamnedēļ	lake
baznīca	recognize	lidot	tell
iespaidīgs	church	novēlēt	next week
laiva	impressive		fly
	boat (dim. laiviņa		wish
	'canoe, skiff,		
	paddle-boat')		

Language points

Letter-writing

Baiba has written a casual, informal letter to a close friend. Note the way she addresses her: **Dārgā Biruta!** She uses the definite form **dārgā** 'dear' and the vocative case. If the letter were to a man it would begin with **dārgais**.

In a more formal letter we might use the word **cienījam/-ais/-ā**. This approximately means 'respected' or 'esteemed' (**cienīt** 'respect').

In signing off, Baiba used the phrase: **Visu labu jums visiem novēlē ...**, roughly 'All best wishes to you both from ...'. The farewell phrase in a letter can be varied in many ways. One common, and slightly more formal, expression is **Ar sirsnīgiem sveicieniem** 'With sincere greetings' or simply **Ar sveicienu**. Latvians are less likely to use the terms of endearment that English-speaking letter-writers tend to use, unless they really mean them. And if terms of endearment are called for, then a Latvian might address his or her loved one with a diminutive: **Pēterīti!** or **Baibiņ!** and so forth.

Prepositions used as conjunctions

A very few of the prepositions in the list above can be used as conjunctions as well. Baiba used one of them in her letter:

cik daudz šī zeme ir pārmainījusies, kopš tu to pēdējo reizi redzēji.

how much this country has changed *since* you last saw it.

Here the word **kopš** governs a whole clause, just as 'since' does in English.

Pirms 'before' can be used in a similar way:

Pirms viņa rakstīja vēstuli, Baiba ilgi domāja.

Before she wrote the letter, Baiba thought for a long time.

We cannot use any of the other prepositions to govern whole clauses, except, in some contexts, **līdz** 'until':

Es gaidīju ilgi, līdz viņi atgriezās.

I waited a long time until they returned.

(But **līdz** is not used very much in this way; a more common word for 'until', which would be more natural here, is **kamēr** – which also means 'while'.)

Verbs governing the dative case

Some verbs which might seem to an English-speaker to require a direct object, actually govern the dative case. One of them, **sekot** 'follow', occurred in Baiba's letter:

Bet mēs sekojām krasta ceļam, nevis Ventai.

But we followed the coast road, not the Venta (river).

Another common verb that takes the dative is **palīdzēt** 'help':

Mēs palīdzējām dāmai pāriet ielu.

We helped a lady cross the street.

In addition there are of course verbs taking the dative that behave very differently from the corresponding English structures, such as **man patīk** 'I like', **man garšo** 'I like (the taste of)'; which we have already discussed. **Ticēt** 'believe' also takes the dative.

'Need' and 'ought'

A very useful verb that is worth special attention is **vajadzēt** 'need'. This is another verb that governs in the dative what would be the logical subject in English, for example:

Man vajag jaunu gultu. (Note the present tense ending!)
or: **Man vajadzīga jauna gulta.**
I need a new bed.

(Here **man** is dative, while **jauna gulta** is nominative.) But when used in the subjunctive mood, it takes on the meaning of 'ought' in English. This is how Baiba used it in her letter:

Tev vajadzētu braukt uz Latviju, kā tu bieži esi apsolijsi.
You ought to travel to Latvia as you have often promised to.

Participles used as objects

Where in English we might use a phrase such as 'what was said' or 'what I have seen', Latvian expresses the same idea in one word, using the past passive participle in its definite form. This is what Baiba did in her letter:

- Bet drīz varēšu pati tev pastāstīt par visu redzēto un piedzīvoto.
But soon I'll be able to tell you myself about everything I've seen and experienced.

Here the participle is 'standing in for' a whole phrase, just as a pronoun stands in for a noun. A further example:

Neizteiktā bija vairāk nekā izteiktā.

What was (left) unexpressed was more than what was expressed.

We can do the same with present passive participles too, to make them stand for abstract ideas: **neizteicamais** 'the inexpressible', and so on.

Language in action

Imagine you are writing to a friend in Latvia whom you know reasonably well. Her name is Laima Kārklīna, and let's say her address is Juglas iela 65 - 23 (= flat 23), Riga. You would address the envelope in the same order as you would in any western country.

Points to include in your letter.

Tell her how much you enjoyed her recent visit to your country.
Ask if you may take up her suggestion of visiting her.
Ask her when it would be suitable for you to come.
Tell her that your Latvian has much improved since you last met, but a visit to Riga would improve it even more.
Say you are looking forward to meeting her family and friends.
Ask her if she would like you to bring anything from your country.
Sign off in a friendly way.

Exercise 1

Translate into Latvian, using the relative mood:

- 1 They say he has suddenly become rich.
- 2 I heard that she will never return to our village.
- 3 You are supposed to have never written a letter in your life.
- 4 They told me the doctor will be here in an hour.
- 5 It is supposed to be the oldest settlement in Latvia.
- 6 The Lithuanians are supposed to be poorer than the Latvians, but I don't believe that.
- 7 Norway is said to be the most expensive country in Europe.
- 8 You were going to buy them a present.

Exercise 2

Translate into Latvian:

- 1 You really ought to help your mother.
- 2 When I return, I'll tell you everything I've heard.
- 3 We followed the river as far as the sea.
- 4 Latvia has several beautiful lakes which you ought to see.
- 5 Before I came here, the shop was almost empty.
- 6 Since we arrived in Latvia we have not had a single free day.
- 7 We walked through Valka as far as the Estonian border.
- 8 They say she has got married, but you ought to ask her.

Reading passage

Here is a passage from a book about the Latvian Ethnographic Museum, Brīvības Muzejs (the Latvian Ethnographic Open-air Museum),

Vocabulary

beigties	end	sekot (+ dat.)	follow
pie dzīvo jums	adventure	garums	length (garš
vajadzēt	need		'long')
pārmainības	change, be	jūrmala	seashore (comp.
	transformed		Jūrmala, Rīga
svainis	brother-in-law		seaside resort)
licis	bay, gulf	smalks	fine
rags	horn; antler;	smiltis (f.)	sand (usually pl.,
	promontory		smiltis)
pažīt	recognize	ezers	lake
baznīca	church	pastāstīt	tell
iespaidīgs	impressive	nākamnedēļ	next week
laiva	boat (dim. laiviņa	lidot	fly
	'canoe, skiff,	novēlēt	wish
	paddle-boat')		

Language points

Letter-writing

Baiba has written a casual, informal letter to a close friend. Note the way she addresses her: **Dārgā Birutā!** She uses the definite form **dārgā** 'dear' and the vocative case. If the letter were to a man it would begin with **dārgais**.

In a more formal letter we might use the word **cienījam/-ais/-ā**. This approximately means 'respected' or 'esteemed' (**cienīt** 'respect').

In signing off, Baiba used the phrase: **Visu labu jums visiem novēlē ...**, roughly 'All best wishes to you both from ...'. The farewell phrase in a letter can be varied in many ways. One common, and slightly more formal, expression is **Ar sirsnīgiem sveicieniem** 'With sincere greetings' or simply **Ar sveicieniem**. Latvians are less likely to use the terms of endearment that English-speaking letter-writers tend to use, unless they really mean them. And if terms of endearment are called for, then a Latvian might address his or her loved one with a diminutive: **Pēterīti!** or **Baibiņ!** and so forth.

Prepositions used as conjunctions

A very few of the prepositions in the list above can be used as conjunctions as well. Baiba used one of them in her letter:

cik daudz šī zeme ir pārmainījusies, kopš tu to pēdējo reizi redzēji.

how much this country has changed *since* you last saw it.

Here the word **kopš** governs a whole clause, just as 'since' does in English.

Pirms 'before' can be used in a similar way:

Pirms viņa rakstīja vēstuli, Baiba ilgi domāja.

Before she wrote the letter, Baiba thought for a long time.

We cannot use any of the other prepositions to govern whole clauses, except, in some contexts, **līdz** 'until':

Es gaidīju ilgi, līdz viņi atgriezās.

I waited a long time until they returned.

(But **līdz** is not used very much in this way; a more common word for 'until', which would be more natural here, is **kamēr** - which also means 'while'.)

Verbs governing the dative case

Some verbs which might seem to an English-speaker to require a direct object, actually govern the dative case. One of them, **sekot** 'follow', occurred in Baiba's letter:

Bet mēs sekojām krasta ceļam, nevis Ventai.

But we followed the coast road, not the Venta (river).

Another common verb that takes the dative is **palīdzēt** 'help':

Mēs palīdzējām dāmai pāriet ielu.

We helped a lady cross the street.

In addition there are of course verbs taking the dative that behave very differently from the corresponding English structures, such as **man patīk** 'I like', **man garšo** 'I like (the taste of)', which we have already discussed. **Ticēt** 'believe' also takes the dative.

'Need' and 'ought'

A very useful verb that is worth special attention is **vajadzēt** 'need'. This is another verb that governs in the dative what would be the logical subject in English, for example:

Man vajag jaunu gultu. (Note the present tense ending!)
or: **Man vajadzīga jauna gulta.**
I need a new bed.

(Here **man** is dative, while **jauna gulta** is nominative.) But when used in the subjunctive mood, it takes on the meaning of 'ought' in English. This is how Baiba used it in her letter:

Tev vajadzētu braukt uz Latviju, kā tu bieži esi apsolījusi.
You ought to travel to Latvia as you have often promised to.

Participles used as objects

Where in English we might use a phrase such as 'what was said' or 'what I have seen', Latvian expresses the same idea in one word, using the past passive participle in its definite form. This is what Baiba did in her letter:

- Bet drīz varēšu pati tev pastāstīt par visu redzēto un piedzīvoto.
But soon I'll be able to tell you myself about everything I've seen and experienced.

Here the participle is 'standing in for' a whole phrase, just as a pronoun stands in for a noun. A further example:

Neizteiktā bija vairāk nekā izteiktā.

What was (left) unexpressed was more than what was expressed.

We can do the same with present passive participles too, to make them stand for abstract ideas: **neizteicamais** 'the inexpressible', and so on.

Language in action

Imagine you are writing to a friend in Latvia whom you know reasonably well. Her name is Laima Kārkliņa, and let's say her address is Juglas iela 65 - 23 (= flat 23), Rīga. You would address the envelope in the same order as you would in any western country.

Points to include in your letter.

Tell her how much you enjoyed her recent visit to your country.
Ask if you may take up her suggestion of visiting her.
Ask her when it would be suitable for you to come.
Tell her that your Latvian has much improved since you last met, but a visit to Riga would improve it even more.
Say you are looking forward to meeting her family and friends.
Ask her if she would like you to bring anything from your country.
Sign off in a friendly way.

Exercise 1

Translate into Latvian, using the relative mood:

- 1 They say he has suddenly become rich.
- 2 I heard that she will never return to our village.
- 3 You are supposed to have never written a letter in your life.
- 4 They told me the doctor will be here in an hour.
- 5 It is supposed to be the oldest settlement in Latvia.
- 6 The Lithuanians are supposed to be poorer than the Latvians, but I don't believe that.
- 7 Norway is said to be the most expensive country in Europe.
- 8 You were going to buy them a present.

Exercise 2

Translate into Latvian:

- 1 You really ought to help your mother.
- 2 When I return, I'll tell you everything I've heard.
- 3 We followed the river as far as the sea.
- 4 Latvia has several beautiful lakes which you ought to see.
- 5 Before I came here, the shop was almost empty.
- 6 Since we arrived in Latvia we have not had a single free day.
- 7 We walked through Valka as far as the Estonian border.
- 8 They say she has got married, but you ought to ask her.

Reading passage

Here is a passage from a book about the Latvian Ethnographic Open-air Museum), Brīvdabas Muzejs (the Latvian Ethnographic Open-air Museum),

which the Kalējs family visited in an earlier lesson. It describes the interiors of some traditional Latvian houses. Vocabulary will be found in the Glossary

Senākajā baltu majoklī bija viena telpa un pavards tās vidū. Šāds iekārtojums saglabājies vairs tikai vārāmajiem namiņiem un vietumis arī pīrīfīm. Pavardu jau vismaz tūkstoš gadus aizvietojuši akmens krāvuma krāsns. Parasti to ierīkoja istabas kaktā, lai izbrīvētu pārējo telpu. Līdzīgi rīkojās arī Austrumlatvijā: istabā pa labi vai kreisi no ieejas blīvēja vai mūrēja krāsni – cepli, kurš bija bez dūmvada, novietots uz 2. vai 3. gulbalku cirtņa – paceplā. Šādi apsildāmai istabai pievienoja – ‘piecirta’ trīssienu priekšnamu bez griestiem – sīnces, bet savienojot ar sīncēm divus cirtņus, izveidojās trīsdalīga dzīvojamā māja; krāsns varēja būt abos tās ‘galos’ vai arī tikai vienā. Neapkurināmo galu izmantoja kā klēti un pieliekamo, vai arī to apdzīvoja tikai vasarās. Ar laiku latgališu krāsns zaudēja pacepli, bet ieguva dūmejas un skursteni. Krāsni blakus sāka mūrēt plīti; pazuda arī grozāmais kāsis, uz kura pakāra ēdiena katlu. Dažviet arī sīnces sadalīja ar sienu ēkas garenvirzienā – radās priekšnams (nams) un pieliekamais vai atsevišķa virtuve ar lielās istabas krāsns kurtuvi un plīti.

16 Mūzika un kultūra

Music and culture

By the end of this lesson you should know more about:

- Latvian music and drama
- ‘inclusive’ pronouns

Dialogue 1

Arriving at the Song Festival

One of the biggest events of the Latvian summer, in the years when it is held, is the Song Festival – Dziesmu Svētki. The Kalējs family and their hosts are able to attend it. They find themselves part of a huge crowd

- BAIBA: Par laimi esam atnesuši savas tautas tērpus līdz. Ļoti cerēju apmeklēt šos svētkus!
- JĀNIS: Šo tērpu es valkāju iepriekšējo reizi, kad dziedāju kopā ar mūsu kori pie mums Adelaidē.
- DZIDRA: Jā, un redzi, tēti, šodien šeit dzied arī kāds koris no Adelaides. Varbūt redzēsim kādu pazīstamu seju.
- IMANTS: Šeit ir mīļīgi pūli, vēl vairāk cilvēku, nekā es varēju iedomāties.
- GUNĀRS: Ir vienreizēja iespēja redzēt un klausīties muzikantus no visas Latvijas.
- BAIBA: Kori ir braukuši uz šiem svētkiem ne tikai no Latvijas, bet arī no ārvalstīm.
- JĀNIS: Gunār, vai jūs ar Aiju vienmēr piedalāties šajos svētkos?
- GUNĀRS: Jā, katru reizi mēs esam piedalījušies. Tas ir unikāls notikums, kas apvieno visu tautu, ne tikai dzimtenē dzīvojošos latviešus, bet arī trimdniekus.

BAIBA:

Un arī mani vecāki piedalījās tajos. Atceros, ka biju vēl mazāka nekā tu, Dzidra, kad mana vecmāte pirmo reizi pavadīja mūs ar savu māsu uz svētkiem!

JĀNIS:

Mans tēvs stāstīja, ka viņa vectēvs esot bijis klāt jau pirmajos svētkos, kas notika 1873. gadā!

Vocabulary

svētki	festival	piedalīties	participate, take part
par laimi	fortunately	unikāls = vienreizējs	event
valkāt	wear	notikums	event
iepriekšējs	previous, last	apvienot	unite
koris	choir	dzimtene	native country,
milzīgs	huge, enormous	trīdiniņeks	motherland
pūlis	crowd	vecmāte	exile, national
iedomāties	imagine	pavadīt	living abroad
vienreizējs	unique	vecēvs	grandmother
klausīties	listen to	pavadi	accompany
muzikants	musician	vecēvs	grandfather
ārvalsts	foreign country		

Language points

Inclusive plural pronouns

Look again at these sentences in the dialogue above:

vai jūs ar Aiju piedalījāties šajos svētkos katru reizi?
did you and Aija take part in these festivals every time?

mana vecmāte pavadīja mūs ar savu māsu uz svētkiem.
my grandmother accompanied my sister and me to the festival.

In Latvian the plural pronouns **mēs**, **jūs** and **viņi** can be used to include single individuals mentioned separately in the same phrase. Thus **mūs ar savu māsu** does not refer to 'my sister with us', but 'us including my sister', that is 'my sister and me'. The important clue here is the preposition **ar**; it has an inclusive, not an exclusive meaning.

Language in action

If you have the accompanying sound recording, listen to a song by the popular Latvian singer Ieva Akurātere, which is reproduced here. See if you can follow and understand it. Any additional vocabulary will be found in the Glossary.

Manai tautai

Manas domas tās naktīs skrien visādušos celus,
Uz priekšu, uz sāniem, nereti riņķos,
Manas saknes es jūtu, tās neaug kā nākas,
Pat auglīgā zemē tās liecas¹ un nīkst.¹
Mana tauta, tā nīkst visās pasaules malās,
Bez zemes savas tā cīnās¹ un dalās,¹
Mana tauta, tā nīkst visās pasaules malās,
Pat savā zemē tā neaug kā nākas.

(Chorus) Palidzi, Dievs, palidzi, Dievs, visai latviešu tautai,
Saved¹ to mājās pie Daugavas krastiem,
Saved to mājās.

Palidzi, Dievs, palidzi, Dievs, mūsu latviešu tautai,
Dzīt saknes drīz brīvas Latvijas zemē,
Dzīt saknes drīz brīvas Latvijas zemē.

Katru dienu tā sāp visai latviešu tautai,
Dalītai, šķirtai, tik skumīgi skan dziesma.

Katru dienu tā sāp visai latviešu tautai,
Dalītai, šķirtai, dziesmā lēnām mums liesma.
(Chorus)

1 Infinitive forms of these verbs are: **liekties**, **nīkt**, **cīnīties**, **dalīties**, **savest**, **dzist**.

Dialogue 2

At the theatre

*Later in the week, the family goes to the theatre in Riga. There is a performance of a well-known Latvian play, **Pūti, vējiņi** ('Blow, Wind' – which is also the name of a much-loved Latvian folk-song), by Jānis Rainis (1865–1929), Latvia's best-known writer. Here is an excerpt from it, with stage directions*

(Ienāk Gatiņš, jauneklis gadu astoņpadsmit, neveikls, klibš, savārgušu seju, maza auguma, runā bailīgi.)

GATIŅŠ (*pavēris durvis*): Man mātē lika, lai es saucu jūs azaidā.
CIEPA: Ko tu tik lepns! – Ienāc jel godīgi iekšā maltuvē. Aiztaisi durvis. Tā.

(*Gatiņš ienāk uz aiztaisa durvis*)

ORTA: Pasak' laburītu, dēls! dod dievpālīgu!
Kas dievpālīdz nesacīja,

Tas nes velnu mugurā.

GATIŅŠ: Labu rītu! Dievs palīdz!

ANDA: Dievs palīdz tev ar'! Mēs jau tev arī palīdzam: būs arī taviem zirgiem miltu uzmetiņš.

(*Meitas smejas, Gatiņš nokaunās un iet uz durvīm.*)

CIEPA: Pagaid' jel! Pasaki jel vismaz, ko tad tev lika mums teikt.

GATIŅŠ (*apstājas*): Azaidā lai nākot.

ANDA: Parunāties taču arī drusku ar mums, sieviešiem; esam taču jaunas, glītas meitas, neapsmādē mūs. Mums garš laiks,

tu tik žēlīgi pūt. Mums vēl jānobeidz malums.

GATIŅŠ (*ar roku rāidāms*): Tur dzied; nāk.

(*Taisās iet.*)

ORTA: Kur? – Nedzirdu.

CIEPA: Nu neej! Vai tad neviena meita tā nu nepatīk?

GATIŅŠ: Patīk.

ZANE: Kura tad tev patīk? Vai es?

GATIŅŠ: Visas.

ZANE: Ār, visas! Vai tad Ciepa tāpat kā es?

GATIŅŠ: Tu vairāk.

CIEPA: Ko, tad es tev nepatīku? Vai es tev par vecu ligaviņā?

ANDA: Bet es jauna. Vai tad es arī nepatīku?

GATIŅŠ: Tu mani smeji.

ANDA: Vai tad labāk raudāt par tevi?

ZANE: Ko gribat no zēna? Viņam jau ir sava ligaviņa. Kā lai mēs viņam patīkam?

ANDA (*stājas celā, apķerdama*): Nelaidīšu; saki! Vai Barba tava ligaviņa? Kas tev te piedurknē?

(*Gatiņam izkrīt maza miltu lāpstīņa. Anda to pacel.*)

Kāda glīta lāpstīņa! Tik gludi, rūpīgi nodrāsta; tad ta' laba miltus raust! – Kam tā būs? – Dod man!

GATIŅŠ (*itin kļusu*): Nevar.

ANDA: Dod man; nesmiešos!

GATIŅŠ (*tāpat*): Tā Bārbalai – viņai daudz jāmal.

(*Nosviež lāpstīņu pie Barbinas un aizbēg.*)

Vocabulary

jauneklis	youth	pūst	blow (pres. 2nd pers. pūt)
neveikls	awkward, clumsy	nobeigt	finish
klībs	lame	malums	grinding, milling (malt 'grind, mill')
savārgt	get sickly	nevienš	no, not one
augums	stature, height	tāpat (kā)	just as, as well (as)
bailīgs	timid	ligaviņa	dim. of ligava: bride
pavērt	open slightly (pa- + vērt)	smiet	laugh at (pres. smeji; see smieties above)
azaidš	meal	raudāt	cry, weep
jel	(intensifier meaning roughly 'just', 'do!')	zēns	boy
godīgs	honest	apķert	grasp, clasp
maltuve	flour-mill	laist	let (pass) (pres. laiž, future laidis)
aiztaisīt	close, shut	piedurkne	sleeve
pasacīt	say	izkrīt	fall out
dievs palīdz	(greeting) lit.: God help	lāpstīņa	ladle, spatula, scoop
milti	flour	pacelt	pick up
uzmetiņš	helping, handful	gluds	smooth
smieties	laugh (pres. smejas)	rūpīgs	careful, thorough
nokaunēties	feel ashamed	nodrāzt	whittle
parunāties	talk for a while	itin	rather, fairly
sieviete	woman	nosviet	fling, throw (pres. nosviež)
apsmādēt	disdain, scorn	traditionāls	run away
pastabulēt	pipe a little (stabule: traditional Latvian pipe)	aizbēgt	sad, plaintive
žēlīgs	sad, plaintive		

Language points

Note: this play is mostly in verse, and has many poetic turns of phrase. The following language points are to help you understand it.

Approximate numbers

The stage direction which opened this passage described Gatiņš as a **jauneklis gadu astoņpadsmit** 'a youth of about eighteen'. The number is placed *after* the noun **gads** 'year' if we want to make it more approximate.

Phrases with **ko** and other expressions

Ko tu tik lepns! says Ciepa in the play. This might be translated as 'What are you being so proud about?' It is quite common to use exclamations like this beginning with **ko** (= **par ko?**).

The expression **Dievs palīdz!**, literally 'God help', is rather old-fashioned nowadays. It is akin to the German **Grüß Gott** and is a relic of the days when social life and manners were led by the Baltic German nobility.

The particle **jel** is an emphatic particle, roughly corresponding to English 'do!' in phrases like 'Do come in!'

The letter **ŗ**

This letter represents a palatalized **r**, though the difference is barely audible. The letter was abolished early in the Soviet era, and has not been re-instated in the language. It is found in Latvian books and publications of the first independence period – and therefore Rainis used it – and it has survived in books and publications issued abroad. Some Latvians still use it in writing (as indeed they also use **ch** instead of **h** in words like (c)**hronika** 'chronicle'). The letter **ŗ** is found in this text in the words **garš** (**Mums garš laiks**) and **kuŗa** (**Kuŗa tad tev paŗik?**). It was not a common letter, and was never used at the beginning of words; another common word which used to include it is **karŗ** (now spelled **karŗ**) 'war'.

Exercise 1

Translate into Latvian:

- 1 Jānis Rainis was one of the most important Latvian writers.
- 2 'Blow, Winds' was written for a Latvian theatre in St Petersburg (**Pēterpils**).
- 3 The play's first performance took place in 1913 (in words!).

4 The first performance in Latvia was at the New Theatre in Riga the following year.

5 '*Fire and Night*' was the name of a play which expressed the exile Rainis' longing for (**pēc**) his homeland.

6 In (**Ar**) time it became Rainis' most popular and most often performed play.

7 The action of the first scene of the play takes place (**norīt**) in a flour-mill.

8 The play is a love-story told in verse.

17 Latvijas masu informācijas līdzekļi

The Latvian mass media

By the end of this lesson you should know more about:

- the Latvian media
- phrases with **tā** and **kā**
- impersonal verbs

Dialogue 1

A newspaper interview

A newspaper journalist asks Jānis for an interview about his experiences as a Latvian from abroad. This is the result

ŽURNĀLISTE:

Sāsim sarunu ar iepazīšanos. Īsumā, kāds ir bijis jūsu dzīves gājums?

JĀNIS:

Mans dzīves gājums? Es piedzimu šeit Latvijā, Rīgas tuvumā. Man bija tikai trīs gadi, kad ģimene pārcēlās uz Austrāliju, caur kara bēgļu nometnēm, tāpat kā daudz citu latviešu. Uzaugu Dienvidaustrālijā, starp daudziem citiem trimdiniekiem, ne tikai no Latvijas, bet arī no citām Austrumeiropas zemēm: no Dienvidslāvijas, no Polijas, no Ukrainas utt. Studēju Adelaidē, un apmeklēju vietējo universitāti. Drīz pēc studiju beigām saņēmām inženiera darba vietu, vienā no štata lielākajām rūpnīcām. Bet tad, kad apprecējās ar savu sievu Baibu, man piedāvāja iespēju nodibināt savu uzņēmumu, kas nodarbojas ar alus brūvēšanas iekārtām.

ŽURNĀLISTE:

Un jūsu sieva ir arī latvietē?

JĀNIS: Jā, arī viņa ir dzimusi šeit, Vidzemē. Viņas ģimene iepazīnās ar manu ģimeni jau drīz pēc pārcelšanās uz Austrāliju.

ŽURNĀLISTE: Kur meklējamas jūsu ģimenes saknes? Pastāstiet par saviem vecākiem.

JĀNIS: Cik es zinu, esmu cēlies no Kurzemes no mātes puses, bet cilts koka saknes tēva pusē atrodas kādā pagastā Rietumlatgalē. Mans tēvs nesen mira, bet māte dzīvo vēl Austrālijā.

ŽURNĀLISTE: Jums ir ģimene, ir bērni?

JĀNIS: Man ir divi bērni, zēns un meitene. Gribētos, lai abi bērni prastu latviski un iepazīstos ar savu vecāku dzimteni.

ŽURNĀLISTE: Kāpēc jūs nolēmāt apmeklēt Latviju tieši tagad?

JĀNIS: Nu, jau ilgu gadu ir bijis nolūks to apmeklēt, bet Padomju laikā viss šķita mums tik drūms un grūts. Mans tēvs noliedza apmeklēt Latviju, kamēr tā nebija brīva, kaut gan viņš ļoti ilgojās pēc tās un pēc sava otrā dēla. Ar savu brāli esmu pats vienmēr sarakstījies, bet diezgan reti. Tikai tad, kad mums pašiem bija bērni, un Latvija vienlaicīgi kļuva par brīvu valsti, nolēmām veikt šo braucienu.

ŽURNĀLISTE: Un kādi ir jūsu iespaidi līdz šim, kā viesim no trimdas pēc tik ilgas prombušanas?

JĀNIS: Nu, esmu vienmēr bijis optimists, un man ir priedīgs pārsteigums, ka viss iet tik strauji uz priekšu. Mans brālis tomēr, kas visu mūžu dzīvo šeit, nesaprot, ka viņa dzīve virzās uz priekšu – viņam protams šķiet, ka viss norit pārāk lēni. Ikdienā varbūt to neizjūt, bet valsts noteikti attīstās kopumā uz labākiem laikiem.

Vocabulary

iepazīšanās	getting acquainted (iepazīties 'get acquainted')	pārcēlies bēglis	move refugee
īsums	brevity, shortness (īsumā 'in brief')	nometne	camp
gājums	course, progress	uzaugt	grow up
piedzimt	be born	utt. = un tā tālāk	and so on
		studēt	study

universitāte	university	noliuks	intention
studijas	studies	drūms	gloomy
inženieris	engineer	ilgoties (pēc)	long, yearn (for)
štats	state	sarakstīties	correspond
rūpniecība	industrial plant	vienlaicīgs	simultaneous
aprecēties	get married	trinda	exile
piedāvāt	offer	prombušana/	absence
nodibināt	found, establish,	prombūtne	
	set up	optimists	optimist
uzņēmums	enterprise, business	virzīties	advance
nodarboties	be occupied/	izjust	feel, sense
(ar)	engaged (in)	noteikts	definite
iekārta	system, equipment	attīstīties	develop
cilts	tribe	kopums	totality, whole
nesen	recently		

Language points

Phrases with tā and kā

un tā tālāk	and so on, etc.
tā kā	as, since
it kā	as if
gluži kā	just/quite like
tāpat kā	as well as

Impersonal verbs used in a passive sense

We have already met the third-person impersonal verb in earlier lessons. In Jānis' interview above, he used the phrase:

man piedāvāja iespēju I was offered the opportunity

It is very common to use impersonal verbs in Latvian where we would use a passive form in English.

Language in action

Newspapers

The main Riga daily papers are *Diena* ('The Day') and *Neatkarīgā Rīta Avīze* ('The Independent Morning Newspaper'). There are of course plenty of local and specialized newspapers as well. The mast-heads of the main papers are shown below.

Let us have a look at the contents of a Latvian national newspaper. By now you will have learned enough of the language to be able, with the help of a dictionary, to read some of the articles in the Latvian papers. Let's learn some useful vocabulary to find our way around them.

On the front page, above the masthead, you might find a brief weather forecast (**laika prognoze**). The main news item will generally be something of national importance, with a summary of what you will find on other pages. The leading article will appear on page 2, along with letters to the editor (**vēstules**). Pages 2 and 3 are generally given over to political debate under such general headings as **politika** 'politics', **notikumi** 'events', **fakti, komentāri**, or **problēmas, pētījumi** 'investigations, research', **skandāli**.

Further into the paper we would find interviews with prominent figures, and the **kultūra** 'culture, arts' section, along with small items of local news (**vietējās ziņas**). Economic news might come next: **saimniecība** 'the economy', **darījumi** 'business', (literally 'dealings'), **nauda** 'money'. Then we come across the international news

Rīta Avīze
Neatkarīgā

Latvijas Republikas
Diena

(ārzemju ziņas), usually confined to one page, under such headings as **politika**, **ekonomika** 'economics', **zinātne** 'science'. This will usually be followed by the sports page (**sports**).

The back page generally carries smaller items such as minor news (**īsumā** 'in brief' or **sīka informācija** 'minor reports'), currency exchange rates (**valūta**), a more detailed weather report (**laika ziņas**), and of course the crossword puzzle (**krustvārdu mīkla**). If you can attempt that, your knowledge of Latvia and Latvian is coming on very nicely!

On different days of the week, the Latvian national papers also carry different kinds of supplements: for women (**stievietēm**), leisure (**atpūta**) or entertainment (**izklaide**), covering radio and television (either **radio un televīzija** or **tāldzīrde un tālrāde**) and events (usually under the heading **celvedis** 'guide'). The newspapers also cater for the great interest in spiritual and supernatural things: don't be surprised to find detailed horoscopes, or even a whole page with the heading **Dvēselei** 'for the soul'.

Newspapers also carry various kinds of classified advertisement, as we've already seen in lesson 9. In some papers there are entire pages of advertising (**reklāma**) and announcements (**paziņojumi**).

The Latvian national newspapers also act as government gazettes, giving the texts, in a supplement, of the latest laws and decrees (**likumi un lēmumi**) passed by the parliament (**Saeima**).

Broadcasting: television

There are two state-run national television channels in Latvia. In addition there are numerous commercial satellite channels. Russian television ('Ostankino') is also visible virtually all over Latvia, and its programmes are listed in the broadcast schedules. Below we see a typical schedule for Thursday to Saturday, taken from a daily newspaper. Only the main channels' offerings are shown here; study the listings and see if you can answer the questions below.

Ceturtdiena, 8.septembris

Latvijas TV I

18.00	Šodien. Ziņas.	21.10	Sludinājumi.	20.05	Ugunsardzē!
18.10	Latvijas TV - 40.	21.15	Spoguļis. PRO.	20.20	F. Šuberts. Uvertīra itāļu stilā.
	TV iestudējums	22.00	TV mākslas filma <i>Modžjevska</i> .	20.30	Panorāma (ar surdutulkojumu).
	<i>Virtuozs</i>		5.sērija <i>Varšava</i> .	21.00	Novadu vēstis.
19.20	Mākslas filma <i>Irisa Klēve</i> 1.sērija.	23.15	Mūzika atpūtai.	21.25	Spektrs.
		23.45	Nakts ziņas.	21.55	Reklāma un sludinājumi.
20.00	Ekrāns bērniem.		Latvijas TV II	22.00	Šodien. Ziņas (krievu val.).
	<i>Pa saules zāķa pēdām</i> .			22.15	Reklāma.
20.20	Raidījumu reklāma.	19.00	Telekompanija LTS. Ziņas.	22.20	VIA <i>Baltica</i> .
20.25	Reklāma.	19.20	Saeimas preses konference.	22.50	CFI piedāvā ...
20.30	Sports.				

Piektdiena, 9.septembris

Latvijas TV I

18.00	Šodien. Ziņas.	21.05	Reklāma.	20.30	TV veikals (TV Shop).
18.10	Rīgas kinostudijas multiplikācijas filma <i>Princese un puma</i> .	21.10	Sludinājumi.	21.00	Populārzinātniskā programma <i>Pēc 2000.gada</i> .
		21.15	Latvijas TV - 40. Laumai Arājam - 80 gadu jubileja.	21.45	Ēterā - Vidzemes TV.
18.25	No Latvijas TV vēstures. Ieslīma <i>Tēvu zeme</i> 1961.g.	21.30	Z.P.Sartis <i>Altonas gūsteknis</i> .	21.55	Reklāma un sludinājumi.
18.45	Spēlē klavieru duets Antra un Normunds Viksnes.		Starobrīdi - Nakts ziņas.	22.00	Šodien. Ziņas (krievu val.).
19.05	Arēna.		Latvijas TV II	22.15	Reklāma.
19.25	Globuss.	17.00	Kristīgā programma <i>Koniakts</i> .	22.20	<i>E iela</i> . 141. un 142.sērija.
20.00	Miedzīnš nāk ...			23.10	Telekompanija LTS. Ziņas.
20.25	Reklāma.	18.00	ASV atklātās meistarības tenisa.	23.30	Starpnacionālās hokeja līgas sacīkstes. <i>Pārdaugava</i> - ACSK.
20.30	Panorāma.				
20.55	Sports.				

Sestdiena, 10. septembris

Latvijas TV I

9.00	Rīgas Sv. Pāvila baznīcā muzicē
9.35	Atis Stepiņš. TV muzikālā filma bērniem «Punktiņš» uz Holandes kartes.
10.00	Mielasts ar Mārtiņu Vincenti.
10.20	Brīvība uz teātri.
11.00	Rēdēja.
11.45	39. (noslēguma) sērija.
***	Globuss. *9.IX.
18.00	Šodien. Zinas.
18.05	Dānijas TV mākslas filma
23.45	Karala dumpinieki.
0.30	9.sērija Dzīvs vai Radiators.

Latvijas TV II

19.00	miris; 10. sērija <i>Pa plānu ledū.</i>
19.15	A. Vivaldi. <i>Kyrie.</i>
19.40	No Latvijas TV vēstures.
20.00	L. van Bēthovens. Sonāte klavierēm do diez minora.
20.30	Ekrāns bērniem.
21.10	<i>Miedzins nāk ...</i>
21.00	Panorāma.
21.05	Sports.
21.10	Reklāma.
21.15	Sludinājumi.
21.40	Radošā apvienība <i>Labvakar!</i> piedāvā ... <i>Vakara interviu.</i>
21.45	Savai zemei.
21.25	Mākslas filma
23.45	<i>Elpojiet dziļi!</i>
0.30	Ar dziesmu par dzīvi.
13.15	IRR/TV kristīgā programma <i>Ceļš</i> (krievu val.).
13.45	TV <i>Polonia</i> (poļu val.).
14.45	Ukraina (ukraiņu val.).
15.35	<i>Latvija. 37. izdoze.</i>
15.40	No cikla <i>Tāda ir dzīve.</i>
16.10	Iļvanova. Simfoniskais tēlojums <i>Varavīksne.</i>
16.25	Reģionālās TV piedāvā ... <i>Ēterā - Vidzemes TV.</i>
16.55	Kristīgā pasaule.

Questions

On what time and on what channel would you find the following programmes?

- 1 a theatrical evening (Friday)
- 2 programmes in Polish and Ukrainian (Saturday)
- 3 the theatre (Saturday)
- 4 water sports (Saturday)
- 5 hockey (Friday)
- 6 children's programme (Thursday)
- 7 the lotto draw (Friday)
- 8 a piano duet (Friday)
- 9 a Danish film (Saturday)
- 10 news in Russian (Thursday)

Broadcasting: radio

The state-run Latvian Radio (**Latvijas Radio**) service operates on two networks; in addition there are several commercial stations. As with television, the commercial stations tend to provide more

foreign-made entertainment and music; more purely Latvian material is likely to be found on the national networks, which consciously aim at emphasizing Latvian content. The first network of Latvian radio provides an hourly news service. If you have the recordings you will be able to follow the newsreader reading the following local items of news:

Latvijas Radio ziņas

Un tā, pusdienas ziņas:
Stokholmas Ekonomikas Skolā Rīgā šodien darbu turpina starptautisks seminārs 'Preventīvā Diplomātija', kuru ar Zviedrijas Ārlietu Ministrijas atbalstu rīko Baltijas Starptautiskās Humānās Izglītības centrs 'Sadarbība Mieram'. Seminārā tiek pārrunāts preventīvās diplomātijas jēdziens un pielietojumu iespējas, dažādu konfliktu noregulēšanā, attiecinot to gan uz iekšpolitiskām, gan ārpolitiskām Baltijas valstu problēmām. Par veiksmīgu preventīvās diplomātijas pielietojumu semināra dalībnieki nosauca Baltijas valstu sadarbību ar Eiropas Drošības un Sadarbības Organizāciju, Krievijas karaspēka izvešanas un arī ar pilsonības problēmām saistīto jautājumu risināšanu.

Iekšlietu Ministrs Jānis Ādamsons uzskata, ka Robežapsardzības dienesta pāreja no Aizsardzības Ministrijas Iekšlietu Ministrijas pakļautībā ir divu līdz trīs mēnešu jautājums. Pirmdien šo jautājumu paredzēts izskatīt Nacionālajā Drošības Padomē, un Ādamsons izteica cerību, ka Padome pieņems attiecīgu lēmumu. Lietuvas un Igaunijas pieredze rāda, ka robežsargi, esot Iekšlietu Ministrijas pakļautībā, veiksmīgāk sadarbojas ar citām tiesību aizsargāšanas struktūrām, un līdz ar to labāk veic savus uzdevumus – tā paskaidroja Ādamsons.

Bet šodien Valmierā pirmoreiz tiekas Latvijas un Somijas robežsargu pārstāvji. Tiek pārrunāts Somijas robežsargu vadības piedāvājums izstrādāt un realizēt apmācības programmu mūsu robežsargiem. Latvijas robežsargu brigādes virsnieks Gundars Āboliņš pastāstīja, ka robežsargu apmācība plānota Ziemeļvalstu palīdzības programmas Baltijas valstīm ietvaros. Ziemeļvalstis šādu iniciatīvu izrādījušas, ņemot vērā nelegālo imigrantu, īpaši kurdū bēgļu kustības pieaugumu pēdējā gada laikā. No Latvijas sarunās piedalās Robežsargu Brigādes robežu režīma nodaļas priekšnieks Ārijs Jansons, un Valmieras robežsargu bataljona komandieris, un Latvijas un Igaunijas robežsargu pilnvarotais Jānis Virsis.

Pašlaik Rīgā, Filharmonijas Koncertzālē, notiek Apvienības

'Tēvzemei un Brīvībai' pirmais kongress. Šī kongresa nolūks ir apvienot trīs dalīborganizācijas, 18. Novembra Savienību, Nacionālo Apvienību 'Tēvzeme', un Latvijas Jauniešu Apvienību, 'Tēvzemei un Brīvībai'. Kongresā pieņems arī Apvienību 'Tēvzemei un Brīvībai' statūtus un darba programmu.

Questions

(Additional vocabulary will be found in the Glossary.)

- 1 Where is a seminar being held in Riga?
- 2 What is its theme?
- 3 Who is organizing it?
- 4 What is cited as a good example of this theme?
- 5 What is likely to happen to the Border Guard service?
- 6 Who is to discuss the issue, and when?
- 7 What is the advantage of this change?
- 8 On what evidence?
- 9 Who is meeting in Valmiera?
- 10 What will they discuss?
- 11 Who will help the Border Guards with what?
- 12 What are the ranks of the Latvian participants in the talks?
- 13 What is taking place in the Philharmonic Hall?
- 14 What is the aim of it?
- 15- What is the title of the new organization in English?
- 16 What else will take place there?

18 Jānis meklē savu senču saknes

Jānis seeks his family roots

By the end of this lesson you should know more about:

- use of the present participle with different subjects
- how to say 'plenty of'

Dialogue 1

A visit to eastern Latvia

In the last week of the family's stay in Latvia, Gunārs suggests to Jānis a car trip to western Latgale, to seek their father's birthplace

GUNĀRS: Tuvojoties jūsu atvaļinājuma beigām, būtu interesanti apmeklēt mūsu tēva dzimto ciematu, ko tu, Jāni, nekad neesi redzējis. Viņa māja pastāv vēl šobaltdien, un tā atrodas ļoti skaistā vietā, Preiļu tuvumā, Rietumlatgalē. Es ļoti labprāt brauktu uz turieni, bet mums ir vairs tik maz laika Latvijā. Zinu, ka piemēram Rundāles pils mums ir vēl jāapskata, un tad –

GUNĀRS: Bet brauksim tieši caur Rundāli, un apskatīsim arī to! Ja izbrauksim agri no rīta, tad mums būs vēl daudz laika apmeklēt Rundāli. Turklāt ceļš no Rundāles mūs vedīs caur Dienvidzemgali līdz Preiļiem.

JĀNIS: Nu, ko tu domā, Baiba?

BAIBA: Tā kā mēs vēl nesam apmeklējuši to apgabalu, es piekřītu labprāt! Bet vai būs iespējams apskatīt arī Jelgavu?

GUNĀRS: Protams, jo ceļš iet vispirms tieši uz Jelgavu!

Vocabulary

tuvoities	approach	pastāvēt	stand, exist
beigas (pl.)	end	(vēl) šobaltdien	to this very day
dzimts	native, birth-	apskatīt	examine, look
nekad (+ negative verb)	never	tā kā	over
			since, as

Language points

Use of the present participle -ot with different subjects

We already know how to use the present participle -ot in Latvian, in sentences like this:

Dziedot nāca Jāņa bērni. Beidzot darbs bija paveikts.
John's children came singing. Finally ('in ending') the work was done.

In these sentences the two verbs describing simultaneous events have only one subject. But what do we say when two simultaneous actions are performed by different subjects? Take another look at the first sentence in the dialogue, where Gunārs says:

Tuvojoties jūsu atvaļinājuma beigām, būtu interesanti apmeklēt mūsu tēva dzimto ciematu.

The meaning is:

As the end of your holiday approaches, it would be interesting to visit our Dad's home village.

The subject of the first clause, the subordinate clause, is **beigas** 'the end'; the subject of the main clause is the unstated 'it': 'it would be interesting ...'. We express this state of affairs by putting the subject of the subordinate clause in the **dative** case. As **beigas** 'end' is always plural, it appears in the dative plural. Expanding the first example, we might say:

Jāņa bērniem dziedot, citi bērni dancēja.
While John's children sang, the other children danced.

Note also the phrase **tā kā** 'since/as':

Tā kā mēs vēl neesam apmeklējuši apgabalu, ...
Since we haven't visited that area yet, ...

Jānis writes a letter home

And so the family set off on their last excursion by car, through southern and eastern Latvia. That evening, on their return, this is what Jānis writes to a Latvian-born friend and business associate back in Australia:

Rīgā, 24. jūnijā

Dārgais Normund!

Gribētos Tav pastāstīt, noglāst par to, ko mēs esam darījuši te mūsu kopējā dzīvē, un par mūsu iespējām. Esam ar visu ģimeni tikko atgriezušies no bruuciena uz mana tēva dzimto vietu, uz ko mēs nokļuvām caur Jēlguru un Rundālespili. Dabīgi šim esam pāpējuši redzēt daudz ko te Latvijā, bet nekas nav atstājis man tik lielicu iespaidu, kā tieši Rundāle. Vai Tu esi kādreiz to apmeklējis? Ja Tu to atceries, tad droši vien tā bija toreiz vēl neredzētā, jo tikai kopš 1972. gada pils tika atjaunota. Pils sastāvot no 138 ielām (pēc gida ziņām; es tāo nekaitēju!) un jūn no piebraucamā cēla tā izskatās ļoti kopnīdīgi. Varbūt Tu zini, ka pils tika ugalta 18. gadiem, bet šodien es uzgināju, ka pie tāo celtnas darba strādāja ap tūkstoš presimt darbinieku! Neticami! Visas iekārtas ir ļoti jauki izgrāstas.

Vocabulary

kopējs	common, joint	restaurēt	restore
atgriezties	return	atjaunot	restore,
daudz kas	plenty, a lot		reconstruct
atstāt	leave	sastāvēt	consist
lielisks	grand, great,	ziņa	(piece of) news,
kādreiz	magnificent		information
	once, at some	skaitīt	count
toreiz	time	izskatīties	look
	then, at that	iekštelpas	interior
	time	izgreznot	decorate

Language points

'Plenty'

Jānis wrote in his letter:

Līdz šim esam paspējuši redzēt daudz ko te Latvijā.
So far we have managed to see a lot here in Latvia.
Note the two phrases **līdz šim** 'so far, up to now', and **daudz ko** 'plenty, a lot'. We can also say:

Daudz kas ir noticis. (nom.)
A lot has happened.

Exercise

Now continue Jānis' letter to his friend in Latvian yourself.
But the same cannot be said of my father's farmhouse. My brother and I visited it today, and I saw it for the first time. My grandfather had built the farmhouse himself out of pine-planks, and for a lot of money he had bought some farm machinery and started a farm. The farming (**saimniecība**) was starting to go well, but then the war came (**uznāca** or **sākās**) and everything stopped. Suddenly he had to leave it. After the war it became part of a collective farm (**kolhozs**) and was left in a bad condition. But now we found that a new farmer has bought it with privatization certificates and is starting to live in it. He has even restored the old

sauna next to it. He bought the house from my brother, to whom it was given back by the state. My brother has his own business in Riga and did not want to move here.

I will see you soon in Adelaide, and tell you more about everything I've seen here, and the business side of my trip.

With sincere greetings,
Jānis

Reading passage

Rudens sola jaunu privatizācijas vilni

Below is a newspaper article which explains the process of privatization of property in Latvia, using the certificates (*sertifikāti*) which Jānis referred to in his letter. Additional vocabulary will be found in the Glossary

Akvilina Liepiņa

Pēc Valsts statistikas komitejas ziņām, privātais sektors nacionālā kopprodukta veidošanā 1993. gada pirmajā pusgadā ir kļuvis noteicošais – tā īpatsvars ir 55 procenti. Valsts īpašums palicis dominējošs vienīgi rūpniecībā. Ministru kabinets noteicis, ka ministrijām mēneša laikā jāiesniedz valsts īpašumā nododamo un ministrijas rīcībā paturamo īpašumu saraksti. Nav tālu laiks, kad viss, kas ir privatizējams, arī būs privatizēts, un tie Latvijas iedzīvotāji, kas nebūs pamanījušies likt lietā savus privatizācijas sertifikātus, tā arī paliks bešā. Par iedzīvotāju iespējām izmantot sertifikātus privatizācijā *Dienai* bija saruna ar privatizācijas valsts ministru Druvi Skulti.

Lai pastieidzinātu privatizāciju, Ministru kabinets Satversmes 81. panta kārtībā izdarījis grozījumus likumdošanā, kas ļauj saīsināt sertifikātu izsniegšanas termiņu līdz šā gada pēdējai dienai – 31. decembrim. Pēc tam tikai sevišķos gadījumos nosebojušies varēs atvērt savu sertifikātu kontus. Tā ir sertifikātu īpašnieka katra paša brīva izvēle – piedalīties privatizācijā vai palikt malā, teica Druvis Skulte. Ja cilvēks nevēlas iesaistīties biznesā, valsts viņam dod likumīgu iespēju sertifikātus pārdot. Valsti nevar vainot, ja, sertifikātus pārdodot, īpašnieks saņem mazāku samaksu nekā sertifikāta nominālvērtība – 28 latī. Tas ir tāpēc, ka 28 latī nav valsts noteikta sertifikātu cena, bet vērtība, ar kādu sertifikāts var piedalīties privatizācijā. Pārdodot sertifikātus, par cenu īpašnieks vienojas ar pircēju – valsts šajā darījumā neiejaucas.

Vocabulary

Here is some additional vocabulary to help you. Note especially the idiomatic phrases: **likt lietā** 'put to use'; **palikt bešā** 'be left with nothing'; **palikt malā** 'stand aside, remain outside'. Not all the new words are given here; you will be able to guess those 'international' ones – but pay attention to their form and gender!

kopprodukts	gross product	kārība	order (here: 'accordance')
pusgads	half-year	izdarīt	do, make
noteicošs	decisive (noteikt 'determine')	grozījums	amendment
īpatsvars	share, proportion	likumdošana	legislation (likums 'law'; likumīgs 'legal')
īpašums	property	saīsināt	shorten (īss 'short')
mēneša laikā	within a month (lit. 'in a month's time')	termiņš	term, deadline
iesniegt	submit, hand in	nosebojušies	those who are late (noseboties 'be late')
īrība	disposal, possession	konts	account
pamanīties	manage, contrive		(pronounced with a 'foreign' monophthongal o)
pastīdzināt	hurry, hasten	vēlētis	wish, desire
Satversme	Constitution	iesaistīties	join in, get involved
pants	paragraph, article	vainot	blame
		vienoties	agree
		darījums	transaction, deal
		iejaukties	interfere, intervene

Questions

When you have read through the text and understood it, try to answer these questions in English:

- 1 What happened to the Latvian gross national product in 1993?
- 2 In what part of the economy did this not happen?
- 3 Who must do what within a month?
- 4 What will happen in the near future?
- 5 What does the change in the law allow?
- 6 Are there any exceptions?

- 7 Must privatization certificates be used?
- 8 What can be done with them if they aren't used?
- 9 What might happen in selling the certificates (**sertifikātus pārdodot**)?
- 10 Why might that happen, according to the Minister of State?

19 Ģimenes pēdējās dienas Latvijā

The family's last days in Latvia

By the end of this lesson you should know more about:

- uses of the genitive case
- expressions of possibility

Dialogue 1

Revisiting the farm

Gunārs and Jānis and the family continue their exploration of the eastern province of Latgale. On their way back, they call in again to visit Ivars and Dace, who live, you will remember, near Madona. They spend a cosy evening sitting around the table chatting

Ivars: Laipni lūdzam, tik jauki satikties atkal! Vai šodien ir tiešām jūsu pēdējā diena Latvijā?

Jānis: Jā, diemžēl rīt vakarā mums jālido atpakaļ uz Austrāliju un darbu.

Dace: Atvaļinājums ir aizslīdējis tik strauji! Bet labi, ka arī jums, Gunār un Aija, bija dažas brīvas dienas. Bet ko tu pats domā, Jāni – kā tev patīk mūsu dzīves veids šeit laukos, pēc Rīgas trokšņa un steigas?

Jānis: Nu, man tā jāsalīdzina ar pilsētas dzīvi pie mums. Man šķiet, ka jūs dzīvojat daudz mierīgāk, nekā mēs.

Dace: Bet jāstrādā tikpat cītīgi, jāpelna nauda arī šeit!

BAIBA: Ko jūs mēdzat darīt, kad jums vajag atpūsties?

Dace: Mēs braucam pie Gunāra un Aijas uz Rīgu, protams! Bet ir gan reizes, kad vajag pašai savākties. Tad man pietiek Rīgas parku un ielu, un tādu pašu cilvēku kā es. Dažreiz Ivars ir mani aizved pie jūras. Vai braucam ar riteniem.

Bet brīva laika mums parasti nav, vienmēr jāravē dārzs jābaro vistas un tā tālāk.

Ivars: Un vēl ir tādi uzdevumi, kādi ikvienam jādara mājās: jāmazgā veļu un trauki, šādi tādi ikdienas pienākumi.

Dace: Bet šāda dzīve mums tomēr patīk. Esam paši to izvēlējušies.

Vocabulary

laipns	kind, friendly; (Laipni lūdzam! 'you're welcome!')	savākties	gather one's wits/ strength
aizslīdēt	slip away	aizvest	take away
straujš	quick, rapid	ravēt	weed
steiga	hurry, haste	uzdevums	task
cītīgs	diligent	mazgāt	wash
atpūties	relax	pienākums	duty
		izvēlēties	choose

Language points

Uses of the genitive case: a summary

By now you will be fairly familiar with the uses of the noun cases in Latvian. Perhaps the most versatile in its functions is the genitive: it has many more uses than the preposition 'of' does in English. In the dialogue above, for instance, Dace said:

Tad man pietiek Rīgas parku un ielu, un tādu pašu cilvēku kā es.
Then the parks and streets of Riga, and the same sort of people as myself, are enough for me.

Here she was using the genitive plural in a 'partitive' sense: 'some' of the parks, streets and people was all that she meant. Let us gather together here for reference purposes all the uses of the genitive case:

- 1 *possession, belonging:* māsas grāmata 'the sister's book'; koka zari 'the branches of the tree', pilsētas centrs 'the centre of the town';
- 2 *materials, substance, composition:* dēļu grīda 'floor of planks', zelta gredzens 'gold ring', niedru jumts 'roof of rushes' (thatched);

- 3 *use, purpose*: piena kanna 'milk jug', siena šķūnis 'hay barn', kāpostu muca 'cabbage barrel' (in which pickled cabbage is commonly stored and sold in Latvia);
- 4 *subject of an activity*: bērna raudāšana 'child's crying', pērkona spēriens 'thunder-clap', suņa rejas 'dog's bark';
- 5 *object of an activity*: bērna audzināšana 'child-rearing', saistību izpilde 'fulfilment of obligations', veļas mazgāšana 'washing of clothes';
- 6 *possession of a quality or quantity*: goda vīrs 'man of honour', svētku laiks 'festival time', pienākuma cilvēks 'dutiful person';
- 7 *description or classification*: Daugavas upe 'the river Daugava', latviešu tauta 'the Latvian nation', liepas koks 'linden tree';
- 8 *(as the second element) with units of measurement*: kilograms sviesta 'a kilogram of butter', ducis karošu 'a dozen forks', maisis cukura 'a bag of sugar';
- 9 *(plural) repetition for intensification*: gadu gadiem 'for years and years', grēdu grēdām 'heaps and heaps', kaudžu kaudzes 'piles and piles';
- 10 *in conjunction with certain adjectives*: panākumu bagāts 'rich in achievements', slavas kārs 'keen for fame', sniega pilns 'full of snow';
- 11 *as the object of certain verbs, in some cases with prepositions, in a -partitive sense*: alkst laimes 'thirst for happiness', kārot skaistuma 'desire beauty', ilgoties pēc draudzības 'long for friendship';
- 12 *as the object of a negative verb*: neņem žurnāla 'not take the magazine', nedzert piena 'not drink milk', neredzēt neviena putna 'not see a single bird';
- 13 *partitive, uncountable. object*: ēst siera 'eat cheese', gribēties augļu 'want fruit', dzert vīna 'drink wine';
- 14 *as the object of certain prepositions* (see the list in lesson 15).

Exercise 1

Answer these questions about the dialogue:

- 1 No kurienes Gunārs ir atvedis Kalēju ģimeni?
- 2 Kas ģimenei jādara rīt?
- 3 Kāds iepazīs Jānim ir palicis par Ivara un Daces dzīvi laukos?
- 4 Ko mēdz Ivars un Dace darīt tad, kad viņiem vajag atelpas?
- 5 Kādi citi atpūtas veidi viņiem ir?
- 6 Vai viņu dzīve ir grūta?
- 7 Vai viņi ir apmierināti ar to?
- 8 Kur atrodas Ivara un Daces māja?

Dialogue 2

The next morning

Jānis asks Ivars about the most interesting and scenic route back to Riga

GUNĀRS: Dienrēl mums jāturpina brauciens, lai nokļūst atpakaļ Rīgā šovakar. Bet gribētos redzēt šī novada ievērojamākās vietas. Kadu maršrutu tu ieteiktu?

Ivars: Pati Madona ir patkama pilsētiņa, ar ēkām no zviedru laikiem, bet interesantāka ir Cesvaine, pa ceļam no Madonas uz Gulbeni.

GUNĀRS: Bet –

Ivars: Tur atrodas savdabīga pils ar lielu parku, un arī bīskapa pils drupas. No Gulbenes iet šaursliežu dzelzceļš uz Alūksni – šī pilsēta atrodas pie ļoti skaista ezera.

GUNĀRS: Bet Ivar, mums trūkst laika, lai veiktu tādu garu braucieni uz ziemeļiem! Vēl jāsaplānotojas ceļojumam! Mums vajadzētu nedaudz tiešāku ceļu.

Ivars: Jā, zēl! Tad jums visiem būtu jāatbrauc pēc iespējas drīz atkal uz Latviju! Es iesaku jums braukt caur Ērgļiem un Vidzemes augstieni.

Vocabulary

uzrādīt	show, point out	drupas	ruins
ievērojams	remarkable, noteworthy	šaursliežu dzelzceļš	narrow-gauge railway (šaurš 'narrow'; sliede 'rail'; if you can say this tongue-twisting phrase you've really learned Latvian!)
zviedru laiks	the Swedish period (sixteenth–seventeenth century, when the Duchy of Livonia was part of the Swedish empire)	sagatavoties	prepare, get ready
savdabīgs bīskaps	original, peculiar bishop	augstiene	height, highland

'As ... as possible'

Ivars suggested to his guests:

Tad jums visiem būtu jāatbrauc pēc iespējas drīz atkal uz Latviju!
Then you all ought to return *as soon as possible* to Latvia!

In Latvian we say 'according to possibility' with the adverb (or adjective), usually in the comparative degree:

pēc iespējas ātrāk as quickly as possible
pēc iespējas lētāk as cheaply as possible

Exercise 2

Translate into Latvian:

- 1 They were longing for their homeland.
- 2 Inside the restaurant we saw a large beer barrel.
- 3 Training dogs is said to be easy.
- 4 The dishes were full of water.
- 5 The leaves of the trees fall in autumn.
- 6 Pass me that bag of flour!
- 7 She never drinks coffee; she drinks only tea.
- 8 Are you ashamed of (**kaunēties par**) your family's way of life?
- 9 Our friends were living to the north of the city.
- 10 Ask the doctor to come as quickly as possible!

Reading passage

Here is a passage from a short story called Šolaiku mīlas stāsts ('A modern love story') by the young writer Aija Vālodze. Additional vocabulary is in the Glossary

Pulkstenis rādīja astoņi – laiku, kad bibliotēka jāslēdz. Šoreiz Jolanta bija palikusi viena: vadītāja jau otro nedēļu slimoja, un apkopējai vajadzēja nākt it kā nākamās dienas rītā vai pat tikai vakarā, vai varbūt aiznākamās dienas rītā – viņas ierašanās laiku iepriekš nekad nevarēja paredzēt. 'Dzimusi brīvībai' – tā Jolanta par viņu domāja nievīgā uzjautrinājumā, taču izteikt kādus pārmetumus neriskēja, jo tad sākas tik bezgalīga savas taisnības pierādīšana, ka beigās gribējās vai ausis ar pirkstiem bāzt ciet. Savas tiesības Biruta (tā apkopēju sauca) atgādināja arī tāpat vien: vismaz

reizi dienā, tas ir, pusstundā, kamēr pa ejām starp grāmatu plauktiem žigli tika izšķūlēta apskrandusī, ar smiltīm un gružiem nolipusī grīdas lupata.² Biruta tādā vai citādā sakarībā pamanījās iestarpināt, ka esot vientuļā māte un Maskavā neklātienē studējot mākslas vēsturi, pie tam jau ceturtajā kursā.³ Birutai varēja būt gadu četrdesmit, un dažreiz viņai preī atnāca brūtgāns, ko Jolanta klusībā sauķāja daudz rupjākā vārdā, vārgs, tievpiņš viriškūlis,⁴ tā ka likās – pietiktu viņam ar pirkstu krūtīs iebadīt, lai viņš apveltos.

1 'the morning of the day after that'.

2 'the ragged floor-cloth, sticky with sand and dust': **apskrandusī** and **nolipusī** are the definite forms of the past active participle, feminine gender: 'ragged', 'sticky'.

3 'in the fourth year of her course'.

4 'puny, scrawny little man' (diminutive).

20 Atvadīšanās

Farewell

By the end of this lesson you should know more about:

- how to say 'here' and 'there' in different contexts
- nouns formed from reflexive verbs
- the state of the Latvian language today

Dialogue 1

Getting ready to leave

The day has come for the Kalējs family to leave Latvia and fly home. Before Gunārs and Aija take them to the airport, Baiba has to pack the family's bags

BAIBA: Tagad man jāsakrāvā ceļasomas. Neko nedrīkst aizmirst!
GUNĀRS: Vai tev ir tad saraksts, Baiba?

BAIBA: Protams ka nē! Jāni, bērni, jūs varat man te palīdzēt!
Kas vēl trūkst?

JĀNIS: Man jābūt uzvalkam, četriem krekliem, pidžamām, trīs biksēm, pāriem kurpju, apakšveļai, svārkēm, zeķēm – daudz pāriem zeķu – divām kaklasaitēm un protams manām skujamajam aparātam. Kas vēl?

BAIBA: Nu, kam ir kamera?

JĀNIS: Tā ir jau iekrāvāta, manā somiņā. Un kas tev ir?

BAIBA: Man ir šeit svārki, kleitas, zeķes, lietussargs, lietussmētelis, naktskreklis, dārglietu kaste ar saktām un kaklarotām – vēl trūkst zobu pasta un suku! Bet bērni, jūs lietu vēl nav sakrāvāts! Atri, bērni, nāciet tūlīt šurp, jo ir jau vēlu, un drīz mums jābrauc uz lidostu!

DzIDRA: Bet mamma, man ir šeit viss savā somiņā!

BAIBA: Parādi man – nu, te ir tikai tavas lelles un grāmatas. Kur ir tavas drēbes?

DzIDRA: Tur, kopā ar Imanta lietām viņa somā! Redzi: mans tautas tērps –

BAIBA: Tas ir šausmīgi saburzījies! Dod man to. Es to pakošu atsevišķi. Un vēl?

DzIDRA: Peldpalags, blūzes, zeķes, kurpes –

IMANTS: Un te ir manas peldbikses, krekli, bikses, pidžamas, kopā ar manām grāmatām.

BAIBA: Jāni, vai tev ir mūsu dāvanas draugiem?

JĀNIS: Jā, es neesmu tās aizmirsis. Bet Baiba, nedrīkst aizmirst vissvarīgākās lietas: lidojuma biļetes un viesnīcas adresi, kur mēs uzturēsimies apstāšanās vietā!

Vocabulary

sakrāvāt	celasoma	pack (up)	lietusmētelis	'raincoat' (mētelis)
		suitcase (soma		'coat')
		'bag'; somiņa	dārglieta	jewel
		'little bag,	kaste	box
		satchel')	sakta	brooch
aizmirst		forget	kaklarota	necklace
uzvalks		suit	pasta	paste
kreklis		shirt	suka	brush
bikses		trousers	šurp	here, hither
kurpe		shoe	vēlu	late (adverb: note
apakšveļa		underwear		the ending)
svārki		(man's) coat;	lelle	doll
		(woman's) skirt	šausmīgs	awful, terrible
zeķe		(man's) sock;	saburzījies	get tangled
		(woman's)	pakot	pack
		stocking	peldpalags	towel (for
		tie		swimming)
kaklasaite		razor (skū 'shave';	blūze	blouse
skujamais		aparāts	peldbikses	swimming-trunks
aparāts		'apparatus,	dāvana	present, gift
		machine')	svārīgs	important
kamera		camera	lidojums	flight
kravāt		pack	uzturēties	stay
kleita		dress, frock		

Language points

'Here', 'there', 'where': stationary and moving

We already know the words for 'here' (*šeit* or *te*), 'there' (*tur*) and 'where' (*kur*). These words are used when referring to stationary positions. But when we want to refer to movement, as Baiba did when she asked the children to 'come here', we use forms ending in *-p*:

Nāciet šurp!

Come here!

Likewise we say **turp** for 'thither' and **kurp** for 'whither':

Kurp tu ej?

Where are you going?

Es eju turp.

I'm going there.

This might remind you of the word **mājup** 'homeward', in contrast to **mājas** 'at home'.

Note also the expressions **šur tur** 'here and there' (in places); **šurpu turpu** 'here and there' (to places), 'to and fro'.

Nouns formed from reflexive verbs

Nouns describing the actions of most verbs end, as we know, in **-šana** (*rakstīšana* 'writing', *redzēšana* 'seeing', *darīšana* 'doing' and so on). As you will have noticed, these gerunds, as we call them, are declined like any ordinary feminine noun ending in *-a*. There is a slightly different type of gerund which is formed from reflexive verbs. The extra syllable of the reflexive stem **-ies** (*atgriezīties* and so on) is reflected in the gerund by the ending **-šanās** instead of **-šana**. For example, from *klausīt* 'obey' we get *klausīšana* 'obeying, obedience'; but from *klausīties* 'listen' we get *klausīšanās* 'listening'. (But notice that the same doesn't necessarily apply to agent nouns, ending in a long vowel + *j*(ie)s: strictly speaking, the word for 'listener' should be *klausītājs*, but this form is quite rare; much more common is simply *klausītājs*.)

These reflexive gerunds do not have complete declensions. The nominative and genitive forms are identical, and the only other form we find is the accusative, which ends in **-šanos**. As with the other (non-reflexive) gerunds, if the stem ends in a consonant + **-t** the consonant tends to be lost. So from *atgriezties* 'return' we get:

nom.	atgriešanās
gen.	atgriešanās
acc.	atgriešanos

And so, as you have worked your way through this course, it only remains to say **Uz redzēšanos Latvijā!**

Exercise 1

Insert the correct forms of the words in parentheses:

- 1 Baiba ir beidzot (*sakrāvāt*) ģimenes celasomas.
- 2 (*Celasomas*) viņa (*kravāt*) sava vīra (*uzvalks, krekli, bikses*) un (*skujamais aparāts*).
- 3 Viņai bija jāpalīdzēt arī (*bērni*), jo (*palikt*) maz laika pirms (*aizbraukšana*).
- 4 Gunārs ir (*iekraut* 'load') visas somas savas mašīnas bagāžas (*kaste* 'in the boot').
- 5 Drīz viņi (*ierasties lidostā*), un bija (*atvadīšanās*) laiks.
- 6 Dzidra un Imants (*teikt*), ka viņi jau tagad (*ilgoties*) pēc (*atgriešanās*).
- 7 Baibai (*šķīst*), ka viņa esot it kā ('as if') (*uzturēties*) tikai dažas dienas Latvijā.
- 8 Jānis ir (*aicināt*) Gunāru un Aiju pēc iespējas drīz atbraukt ciemos Austrālijā; tad viņš teica: Uz (*redzēšanās*) pie mums!

Exercise 2

Here are the names of some colours in Latvian. Using these and the clothing vocabulary you have learned in this lesson, make your own list of the clothes you own. (By the way, 'wool' is *vilna*, so 'woollen' will be simply *vilnas*; likewise 'cotton' is *kokvilna*, 'silk' is *zīds* and 'nylon' is *neilons*.)

zils	blue	dzeltenš	yellow	pelēks	grey
sarkans	red	balts	white	zaļš	green
melns	black	rozāns (or sārts)	pink	oranžs	orange
sudraba	silver	zelts (or zeltains)	gold	(krāsa)	colour

Language in action

The state of the Latvian language

Now that you have worked your way carefully through this course, you might be surprised to learn that many residents of Latvia do not know the language very well themselves, though Latvian is the official state language. You must remember that for the five decades of Soviet rule, a systematic process of Russification, involving mass immigration and industrialization, meant that Latvians were almost a minority in their own country. Russian took precedence over Latvian in many areas of life and of the country: in public life certainly, and where Latvians were in a minority, even in private life too. Therefore, since the restoration of Latvia's independence in 1991, the state has taken steps to redress this imbalance. Language tests are mandatory for both citizenship and work in the civil service. All signs are now in Latvian in public places, and legislation is enforced to ensure this. Naturally enough, many of Latvia's newer citizens still have an imperfect grasp of the language, and many native speakers who have had to endure the Russification of their life and their language are anxious for advice on correct usage. To help and advise them there are newspaper columns and radio programmes: 'proper Latvian' usage is often debated and discussed in the media. Below you will find a transcript of one such radio programme, **Mūsu valoda**. If you wish to deepen your studies of this rich and fascinating language, you could do worse than follow some of the advice the commentator gives. Additional vocabulary will be found in the Glossary.

Reading passage

Mūsu valoda

Radio raidījumos jau vairākus gadus skanējuši aizrādījumi par dažādām kļūmēm valodā. Sniegti ieteikumi, kā būtu pareizi vai labāk jārunā. Ir taisnība, ka nepareizību valodā joprojām ir daudz. Pret tām jāvērošas arī lai stiprinātu latviskas valodas izjūtu. Bet kur lai vērojam labu valodu? Laikrakstos, radio, televīzijā, pat žurnālos, steigas dēļ ne vienmēr var novērst valodas negludumus. Bet lūk, kādus ieteikumus devis prozas rakstnieks Valentīns Jakobs: Tā

publicēti intervijā laikrakstā 'Labrīt' 6. oktobra numurā. Vispirms valoda ir jāsaklausa un jāizjūt, kā ar vecsmātes pasākām, ar tautas dziesmu. Tālāk šo izjūtu var kopt un attīstīt. Ikviens valoda ir jāciena un jāmīl, bet it īpaši dzimtā valoda. Tik, cik svešvalodas esi iemācījies, tik reizi labāk izproti savu dzimto valodu. Par savu valodu, par labi runātu valodu ir jāpriecājas. Bet kurš to vairs dara? Aplamības, nepareizības un valodas savādības nevienam nesatrauc: ne žurnālistu, ne futbolistu, ne valsts vīru. Ko es lai iesaku valodas garšas kopšanai? Cik daudz lasa Annu Brigaderi, Jāni Jaunsudrabiņu, Apsīšu Jēkabu, Rūdolfu Blaumani, Jāni Akurāteru, Kārlī Skalbi, Plūdoni, un Augustu Saulieti, un Edvartu Virzu: es nemaz nebilstu, ka līdzī derēju taču Kārļa Milenbaha un Jāņa Endzelīna Latviešu Valodas Vardnīca. Lūk, tā ir mūsu bagātība! Ja kādām rastos vēlēšanās latviski runāt gludi un lokāmi, tas ir vienīgais ceļš. Tā pēc iespējas daudz jālasa folklorā un latviešu klasiķi. Lai nu rakstnieka Jakobsona padomi atrastu dzirdīgus ausis!

Exercise 3

Write in the nominative case the names of the persons mentioned in this passage in other cases.

Verb conjugations

Latvian verbs are divided traditionally into three main conjugations, which are further subdivided into groups. The reference numbers here are also to be found next to each verb in the Glossaries at the end of the book. The conjugations are numbered 1-3; the groups are assigned the letters A-E.

Participles and other derived forms are formed in the same way for all conjugations, as described in the lessons, so if you know the present- and past-tense forms, you will be able to derive all other forms. There are only three verbs that are truly irregular and do not fit into any of these conjugations: **būt** 'be', **iet** 'go' and **dot** 'give'.

Present tense Past tense

nākt (1A) 'come' (present tense pl. -a-; stem vowel unchanged)

es	nācu	nācu
tu	nāc	nāci
viņš	nāk	nāca
mēs	nākam	nācām
jūs	nākat	nācāt
viņi	nāk	nāca

likt (1B) 'put' (present tense pl. -a-; stem vowel changes)

es	lieku	liku
tu	liec	liki
viņš	liek	lika
mēs	liekam	likām
jūs	liekat	likāt
viņi	liek	lika

rokt (1C) 'dig' (present tense pl. -a(n)-; stem vowel changes)

es	roku	raku
tu	roc	raki

viņš	rok	raka
mēs	rokam	rakām
jūs	rokat	rakāt
viņi	rok	raka

lauzt (1D) 'break' (present tense -j- or palatalized except **tu** forms; stem ends in consonant)

es	laužu	lauzu
tu	lauz	lauzi
viņš	lauž	lauza
mēs	laužam	laužām
jūs	laužat	laužāt
viņi	lauž	lauza

spēt 'be able' (stem ends in vowel)

es	spēju	spēju
tu	spēj	spēji
viņš	spēj	spēja
mēs	spējam	spējām
jūs	spējat	spējāt
viņi	spēj	spēja

lūzt (1E) 'be broken' (present tense -st-; **tu** form in -i)

es	lūstu	lūzu
tu	lūsti	lūzi
viņš	lūst	lūza
mēs	lūstam	lūžām
jūs	lūstat	lūžāt
viņi	lūst	lūza

domāt (2A) 'think' (present and past stems in -ā-)

es	domāju	domāju
tu	domā	domāji
viņš	domā	domāja
mēs	domājam	domājām
jūs	domājat	domājāt
viņi	domā	domāja

balsot (2B) 'vote' (present and past stems in -o-)

es	balsoju	balsoju
tu	balso	balsoji
viņš	balso	balsoja
mēs	balsojam	balsojām
jūs	balsojat	balsojāt

viņi balso balsoja

medīt (2C) 'hunt' (present and past stems in -ī-)

es medīju mediju
tu medī mediji
viņš medī medija
mēs medījam medijām
jūs medījat medijāt
viņi medī medija

kavēt (2D) 'prevent' (present and past stems in -ē-)

es kavēju kavēju
tu kavē kavēji
viņš kavē kavēja
mēs kavējam kavējām
jūs kavējat kavējāt
viņi kavē kavēja

zināt (3A) 'know' (extra syllable -āj- in past tense; **tu** form in -i)

es zinu zināju
tu zini zināji
viņš zina zināja
mēs zinām zinājām
jūs zināt zinājāt
viņi zina zināja

gaidīt (3B) 'wait' (extra syllable -āj- in past tense; **tu** form in -i)

es gaidu gaidiju
tu gaidi gaidīji
viņš gaida gaidīja
mēs gaidām gaidījām
jūs gaidāt gaidījāt
viņi gaida gaidīja

gribēt (3C) 'want' (extra syllable -ēj- in past tense; **tu** form in -i)

es gribu gribēju
tu gribi gribēji
viņš grib gribēja
mēs gribam gribējām
jūs gribat gribējāt
viņi grib gribēja

Reflexive verbs

All reflexive verbs conjugate similarly, and they are numbered in the Glossaries according to the stems from which they are derived. There are two slightly different conjugations, the only difference being the length of the -a/-ā in the ending.

celties (1D) 'get up' (no vowel in 3rd person of present tense of **celt**: **cēl**)

es celšos cēlos
tu celies cēlies
viņš celas cēlās
mēs celamies cēlāmies
jūs celāties cēlāties
viņi celas cēlās

skatīties (3B) 'look at' (-a in 3rd person of present tense of **skatīt**: **skata**)

es skatos skatījos
tu skaties skatījies
viņš skatās skatījās
mēs skatāmies skatījāmies
jūs skatāties skatājāties
viņi skatās skatījās

Key to exercises

203

Lesson 2

Exercise 1

1 Mēs nebraucam uz Rīgu. 2 Imants neredz autobusu. 3 Dzīvoklis nav tālu no centra (or: Dzīvoklis ir netālu no centra). 4 No dzīvokļa viņi nevar redzēt Daugavu. 5 Jūs nebraucat pa Vecrīgu. 6 Viņš neiet pie mums. 7 Es neeju ārā. 8 Es nesaprotu latviski.

Exercise 2

1 sešas pasašas. 2 trīs mātes. 3 astoņi dēli. 4 septiņi trolejbusi. 5 divas ģimenes. 6 četras meitas. 7 deviņas upes. 8 piecas minūtes.

Exercise 3

1 Baibai ir vecs tēvs. 2 Gunāra ģimenei ir mazs dzīvoklis. 3 Manai sievai ir ērts krēsls. 4 Mums ir divas jaunas meitas. 5 Viņam ir jauna pasa. 6 Viņiem ir veca mašina. 7 Dzidrai ir maza ģimene.

Exercise 4

1 Baibas tēvs ir vecs. 2 Gunāra ģimenes dzīvoklis ir mazs. 3 Manas sievas krēsls ir ērts. 4 Mūsu divas meitas ir jaunas. 5 Viņa pasa ir jauna. 6 Viņu mašina ir veca. 7 Dzidras ģimene ir maza.

Exercise 5

1 Viņa mašina ir neērta. 2 Baibas dzīvoklis ir neērts. 3 Baibas dzīvoklis nav neērts. 4 Baibas dzīvoklis nav liels. 5 Gunāra dzīvoklis nav liels. 6 Gunāra mašina ir liela. 7 Gunāra mašina ir lieliska.

Exercise 6

1 Bērns gul pēc ilgā ceļojuma. 2 Tēvocis/Onkulis nes bagāžu iekšā. 3 Viņi ēd, un tad viņi var gulēt. 4 Ģimene ir klāt (atbraukusi), bet viņi ir visi visai noguruši. 5 Tu varēsi spēlēties rīt. Tagad ej gulēt! 6 Bet es gribu spēlēties tūlīt! 7 Nē, tikai rīt; tad jūs varēsit spēlēties. 8 No Austrālijas uz Latviju ir ilgs ceļojums.

Lesson 1

Exercise 1

1 Es. 2. proti. 3. prot. 4. protam. 5. Jūs. 6. iet. 7. eju. 8. runā.

Exercise 2

1 Mana ģimene un es (or: Es ar savu ģimeni) esam pirmo reizi Latvijā. 2 Runāsim latviski! 3 Mēs esam Rīgas lidostā. 4 Viņi iet ārā. 5 Mēs ejam uz mājām. 6 Saule spīd. 7 Viņi brauc/iet lēni. 8 -Es saprotu latviski, ja jūs runājat lēni.

Exercise 3

1 Vai Baiba prot angliiski? 2 Vai mēs braucam uz mājām? 3 Jāni, vai šodien ir skaista diena? 4 Dzidra, vai tu proti mazliet latviski? 5 Vai bērni brauc uz mājām? 6 Vai jūs esat dzimis šeit? 7 Vai pie jums ir ziema? 8 Vai jūsu ģimene ir pirmo reizi Latvijā?

Exercise 4

1 skaista; spoži. 2 ģimenes pasašas. 3 runā latviski, lēni. 4 Jāni, proti angliiski? 5 Austrālijā, Latvijā. 6 esat pirmo reizi Rīgā. 7 Esiet sveicināti. 8 Gunār, Latvijā.

Questions

1 Kalēju ģimene ir Rīgas lidostā. 2 Darbinieks lūdz viņu pasašas. 3 Nē, Jānis un Baiba ir dzimuši Latvijā, bet bērni ir pirmo reizi Latvijā. 4 Viņus gaida Gunārs un Aija. 5 Gunāra sieva ir Aija.

Exercise 7

- 1 skaistais skats. 2 mazais dārzs. 3 vecais tēvocis. 4 priecīgā māte.
5 ērtā mašina. 6 lielā upe. 7 vienkāršais nams. 8 ilgā nedēļa.

Lesson 3**Exercise 1**

- 1 desmit. 2 pusdeviņi. 3 bez ceturkšņa desmit. 4 septiņpadsmit
minūtes pāri sešiem. 5 bez divdesmit septiņām minūtēm astoņi.

Exercise 3

- 1 Baiba grib palīdzēt Aijai. 2 Nē, jo Baiba ir atvaļinājumā. 3 Aija
grib iet ārā un iepazīstināt viesus ar pilsētu. 4 Nē, viņi brauc ar
trolejbusu. 5 Vispirms viņi brauc uz pilsētas centru. 6 Baiba grib
redzēt vecās un jaunās ēkas, veikalus un parkus. 7 Jāni visvairāk
interesē Vecrīgas vecās ēkas. 8 Viņš ir to mantojis no sava tēva.

Exercise 4

- 1 kas. 2 ko. 3 kādu. 4 kam. 5 ko. 6 ko. 7 kas. 8 kur.

Exercise 5

- 1 senām pilsētām. 2 tālām zemēm. 3 gadiem. 4 ielām. 5 kādām
(dažām) lietām. 6 veikaliem. 7 saviem brāļiem. 8 trolejbusiem.

Lesson 4**Exercise 1**

- 1 Es gāju uz tirgu. 2 Mēs bijām Rīgas tirgū. 3 Imants dabūja
šokolādi. 4 Viņam bija jauna mašina. 5 Saule spīdēja spoži. 6 Jūs
dzīvojāt dzīvoklī. 7 Mēs nespējām iet uz veikalu. 8 Es tev soliņu
nopirkt šokolādi.

Exercise 2

- 1 Es ietu uz tirgu. 2 Mēs būtu Rīgas tirgū. 3 Imants dabūtu šokolādi.
4 Viņam būtu jauna mašina. 5 Saule spīdētu spoži. 6 Jūs dzīvotu

- dzīvoklī. 7 Mēs nespētu iet uz veikalu. 8 Es tev solītu pirkt
šokolādi.

Exercise 3

- 1 Es iešu uz tirgu. 2 Mēs būsim Rīgas tirgū. 3 Imants dabūs
šokolādi. 4 Viņam būs jauna mašina. 5 Saule spīdēs spoži. 6 Jūs
dzīvosiet dzīvoklī. 7 Mēs nespēsīm iet uz veikalu. 8 Es tev soliņu
pirkt šokolādi.

Lesson 5**Exercise 1**

- 1 mācos. 2 mācu. 3 celies. 4 apskatās. 5 tiekamies.

Exercise 2

- 1 Viņa mācās latviešu valodu, lai saprastu latviešus. 2 Mēs
audzējam bietes, lai barotu govus. 3 Es braucu uz Latviju, lai
piedalītos apspriedē. 4 Mana māte dod man sviestmaizes, lai man
būtu, ko ēst. 5 Es steidzos, lai noķertu autobusu.

Exercise 3

- 1 Es negribu neko darīt. 2 Vai Jums nav naudas? 3 Man nekad
nepatīk celties agri. 4 Nekas nav noticis pie mums. 5 Man negaršo
jūsu kartupeļi.

Exercise 4

- 1 Man jābrauc ar autobusu. 2 Cilvēkam jābūt draugiem. 3 Mums
jāsteidzas uz pilsētu. 4 Viņai jādzēr daudz sulas. 5 Man jāzvan savai
mātei.

Lesson 6**Exercise 3**

- 1 Manai mātai salst. 2 Darbs ilga visu dienu. 3 Trīs bērni skrēja
pēc savas mātes. 4 Lietus jau lija, kad es atvēru savu lietussargu.
5 Pulksten četros sāka līt (lietus). 6 Man šķiet, ka viņa ir pazudusi.

Lesson 7

Exercise 1

1 Ģimene ēdīs, dzers un dziedās Līgo dziesmas. 2 Laikam viņi nevar. 3 Imants zina trīs vai četras dziesmas. 4 Nedrīkst gulēt, un jālēc pāri ugunskuram. 5 Tas nozīmētu, ka atradējs gūtu laimi un mīlestību.

Exercise 2

1 Imants atceras astoņas Līgo dziesmas, ko viņš iemācījās skolā. 2 Bet viņam neizdodas atcerēt visus vārdus. 3 Dzidra gribētu palikt pie ugunsкура visu nakti. 4 Jānos latvieši dzied dziesmas, kas (ir) saistītas ar savām tradīcijām. 5 Cilvēkiem patīk svinēt Jāņus, lai satiktos ar saviem draugiem. 6 Alu dzerot, mēs visi dziedājam vecās Līgo dziesmas. 7 Sieru ēdot, Baiba un Jānis atceras savas jaunības Jāņus.

Exercise 3

darīs, ugunsкура. ēdīs, dzers, dziedās. gribētu, rītam, sacīja, nebūs, ugunsкура. sacīja, dzer alu, ēd sieru. atceras, paražu, saistītas Jāņiem. negul Jāņu naktī, iemantotu veselību. domā, svin, satiktu jaunus draugus, jaunas draudzenes.

Lesson 8

Exercise 1

1 Vilciens jau aizbrauca. 2 Kaut arī viņa man noliecda, es tomēr slaucu govīs. 3 Ko viņi tev kļiedza? 4 Viņi neko neteica. 5 Pagājušo otrdien mēs braucām ar autobusu uz Ogrī. 6 Autobuss aizbrauca no Preiļiem bez trijām minūtēm septiņos. 7 Mēs lūdzām šoferim apstāties. 8 Vai jūs sniedzāt viņam biļeti?

Exercise 2

1 pabeidzām. 2 zvidza. 3 aizliedza. 4 sauca. 5 slaucām. 6 palūdzu, pasniedza. 7 noplūca. 8 sasniedzāt.

Exercise 3

pabeigšana, zviegšana, aizliegšana, saukšana, slaukšana, palūgšana, pasniegšana, noplūkšana, sasniegšana.

Exercise 4

1 Virtuvē nav pudeļu. 2 Viņai nav vīra. 3 Uz galda nav tējas. 4 Mežā nebija uguns. 5 Skolā šodien nebija lekcijas. 6 Laukā nav lielu zirgu. 7 Autobusā nebūs pasažieru. 8 Viņai nebija patīkamu atmiņu (or: viņai bija nepatīkamas atmiņas).

Lesson 9

Exercise 1

1 Viņas dzīvoklis ir nodrošināts ar visām ērtībām. 2 Saimniekam ir/tiek ļoti samaksāts. 3 Latvija ir reti apmeklēta zeme. 4 Jau trīs gadus mana māsa meklē ļoti labu celtni mājai. 5 Jauniem precētiem cilvēkiem ir grūti dabūt labu dzīvokli. 6 Jums būs jāstāv rindā.

Exercise 2

1 stāvēdami. 2 privatizēti. 3 precēto. 4 Irēdami. 5 skatīdamies, beidzot. 6 zvanot, pārdota.

Lesson 10

Exercise 1

Labrīt, doktor Liepiņ!

Labrīt, Priedīša kungs! Kā jums klājas?

Man sāt mugura. Lūdzu, vai jūs varētu to apskatīt?

Jā, protams. Cik ilgi tā jums sāt?

Jau trīs dienas, kopš es palīdzēju savai mātei nest bagāžu uz autoostu.

Nogērbiet kreklus, lūdzu. Vai sāt šeit?

Jā, ļoti sāt. Ir degošas sāpes.

Arī šeit?

Nē, ne tik daudz.

Būtu labāk veikt rentgenu. Vai jūs varētu atnākt rīt lai izdarītu to?

Jā, doktor.

Labi. Ejiet uz poliklīniku un sameklējiet māsu.
Paldies, doktor. Uz redzēšanos!

Exercise 3

1 Augošam bērnam vajag daudz miega. 2 Mana māte skrēja pēc braucoša vilciena. 3 Viņš ieļca tekošajā upē. 4 Topošas mātes nedrīkst smēķēt. 5 Ārsts apskatīja manu sāpošo krūti. 6 Skaties uz krītošo sniegu. 7 Nākamajā nedēļā viņi brauks uz Lietuvu. 8 Viņi satiksies ar lietuviski runājošiem cilvēkiem.

Lesson 11

Exercise 1

1 Mans vectēvs ir vecāks nekā tavējais. 2 Jā, bet tavējais ir veselīgāks. 3 Šim maisam jābūt tavējam, jo manējais ir sarkans. 4 Latvija ievēd dažu pārtikas produktus, bet tā ražo arī savējos. 5 Mēs audzējam tomātus savā lauku mājā; vai jūs tos audzējat savējā? 6 Otrā māja ir mūsējā, un piektā ir viņējā.

Exercise 2

1 Dažādas alu šķirnes tiek/tika nogaršotas. 2 (unchanged) 3 Manas firmas produkti tiek izvesti uz ārzemēm. 4 Alus tiek patērēts liela apjomā. 5 Pašmāju tirgus tiek apmierināts. 6 Mūsu alus tiek ievests (citas zemēs). 7 Es tieku spiests grūtā stāvoklī.

Exercise 3

1 tiek ienestas. 2 tiek pievilktas. 3 tiek sagaidīta. 4 tiek salīdzināti. 5 tiek pelnīta. 6 tiek baudīti. 7 tiek pateikts. 8 tiek saprasta.

Lesson 12

Exercise 1

baltkrievs, baltkrieviete. (there is no word for 'Briton': instead **anglis, angliete** would be used for British people generally). vācietis, vāciete. francūzis, francūziete (note!). itālietis, itāliete. spānietis, spāniete. čehs, čehiete. ungārs, ungāriete. polis, poliete. amerikānis, amerikāniete. kanādietis, kanādiete. ukraiņis, ukraiņiete. turks,

turciete (note!). ķīnietis, ķīniete. japānis, japāniete. dienvīdāfrikānis, dienvīdāfrikāniete.

Exercise 2

1 Daudz latviešu dzīvo Kanādā, Amerikas Savienotajās Valstīs, Austrālijā, Lielbritānijā un citur, bet protams visvairāk latviešu dzīvo Latvijā. 2 Igaunija un Lietuva ir mūsu vistuvākās kaimiņvalstis. 3 Ziemeļāfrika ir pasaules viskarstākā daļa. 4 Kas ir vispopulārākais/vismīļākais sporta veids Spānijā? 5 Somi spēlēja vakar pret zviedriem, un somiem bija noteikti labāka komanda. 6 Daži no maniem vismīļākajiem draugiem dzīvo Dānijā. 7 Es esmu braucis/braukusi uz ārzemēm dažas reizes, visbiežāk uz Krieviju, Baltkrieviju un Igauniju. 8 Līdz šim gadam krievi bija vislabākā komanda – viņi bija Eiropas negāzti/neuzvarētie čempioni.

Exercise 3

Pirmās puses beigās negaidīti mačā starp 'Gemma' un 'Olimpiju' – pēc Krēslīņa 11 m. soda sitiena, 'Gemma' atradās ar 1:0 vadību. Tikai 63. minūtē Kārklīnš sasniedza 1:1 (vienu pret vienu), un tikai pēdējās desmit minūtēs paveica Andersons 3:1 uzvaru 'Olimpijas' labā ar diviem vārtiem golem.

Lesson 13

Exercise 1

1 Nācis, nākusi, nākuši, nākušas. Kļiedzis, kļiegusi, kļieguši, kļiegušas. Braucis, braukusi, braukuši, braukušas. Skatījies, skatījusi, skatījuši, skatījušas. Pircis, pirkusi, pirkusi, pirkušas. Izmantojis, izmantojusi, izmantojuši, izmantojušas. 2 Nākošs, nākoša, nākoši, nākošas. Kļiedzošs, kļiedzoša, kļiedzoši, kļiedzošas. Braucošs, braucoša, braucoši, braucošas. Skatošs, skatoša, skatoši, skatošas. Pērkošs, pērkoša, pērkoši, pērkošas. Izmantojošs, izmantojoša, izmantojoši, izmantojošas.

Exercise 2

teica, šķita, ir. jautāja, piesārmots. paskaidroja, neizlaiž, neapstrādātu, pieaug, jācinās, piebilda, sākuši apzināties, jārūpējās, tiek ieplūdinātas, jāaizsargā, tic, neapdraud.

Exercise 3

1 Ceļa satiksme galvas pilsētā pieaug arvien straujāk. 2 Rūpnieciskās vielas tiek ielaistas upē. 3 Latvija ir tikai maza valsts, un tāpēc tā jāaizsargā. 4 Bērni nespēja braukt visu ceļu no šejienes līdz Dubultiem ar riteņiem. 5 Padomju laikā cilvēki neapzinājās vides aizsardzības svarīgumu. 6 Mūsu dienās (Tagad) cilvēki rūpējas vairāk par savu veselību. 7 Ar riteņiem braucot, viņi pārbauda pāri Daugavu pa Vanšu tiltu. 8 Uz lab pusi skatoties, es redzēju divas pret mani braucošas mašīnas.

Language in action

The signs in alphabetical order, match with numbers 8, 13, 14, 5, 15, 9, 4, 10, 3, 12, 1, 7, 6, 16, 2, 11, 17.

Lesson 14

Exercise 1

Kartupelis saņemums ar krējumu un ikrus

kartupelis

sāls

pipari

krējums

melnie ikrus

(varbūt arī) ievārījums vai sēnes

Marinēta siļķe ar kartupeli

siļķe

(2) sīpoli

ūdens

etķis

eļļa

lauru lapas

cukurs

pipari

kartupelis

sviests

skābs krējums

dilles

Exercise 2

Verbs in first recipe:

nomizot, sarīvēt, sagriezt, pielikt, likt, sakarsēt, izlīdzināt, cept, pārliet, uzbērt, ēst.

Verbs in second recipe:

marinēt, nomērcēt, notīrīt, sagriezt, applaucēt, likt, pievienot, pasniegt, ielikt, uzlikt, aiztīt, cept, iešķelt, pildīt, uzkaist, (*Verdošs* 'boiling' is a participle of the verb *virt*).

Exercise 3

1 Mēs esam vienmēr mēģinājuši dzīvot ērti. 2 Tomēr tikai nesen mūsu dzīve ir kļuvusi ērta. 3 Viss uz galda izskatās tik labi. 4 Gatavo visas pankūkas plānas. 5 Es atnācu pie viņiem kā negaidīts viesis. 6 Viņa mani uzņēma kā neaicinātu viesi. 7 Man garšo savs alus auksts. 8 Nomazgā silķes fīras.

Lesson 15

Exercise 1

1 Viņš esot pēkšņi kļuvis bagāts. 2 Es dzirdēju, ka viņa nekad neatgriezšoties mūsu ciemā. 3 Jūs neesot nekad rakstījis vēstuli savā mūžā. 4 Viņi man teica, ka ārsti būšot klāt (šeit) pēc stundas. 5 Tās esot visvecākais ciemats Latvijā. 6 Lietuvieši esot nabadzīgāki nekā latvieši, bet es neticu tam. 7 Norvēģija esot Eiropas visdārgākā zeme. 8 Tu esot nodomājis pirkt viņiem dāvanu?

Exercise 2

1 Tev vajadzētu patiešām palīdzēt savai mātei. 2 Kad es atgriezšos, es tev pastāstīšu visu, ko esmu dzirdējis. 3 Mēs sekojām upei līdz jūrai. 4 Latvijai ir vairāki skaisti ezeri, ko jums vajadzētu redzēt. 5 Pirms es atnācu šurp, veikals bija gandrīz tukšs. 6 Kopš mēs atbraucām Latvijā, mums nav bijusi neviena brīva diena. 7 Mēs (stai)gājām caur Valku līdz Igaunijas robežai. 8 Saka, ka viņa esot precējusies, bet tev vajadzētu jautāt viņai.

Lesson 16

Exercise 1

1 Jānis Rainis bija viens no vissvarīgākajiem latviešu rakstniekiem.
2 'Pūt, vējiņi!' tika rakstīta latviešu teātrim Pēterpilī. (Note: **rakstīta** is feminine because the 'understood' subject is a play, **luga**, which is also feminine. **Pēterpils** is nowadays called **Pēterburga**.) 3 Lugas pirmā izrāde notika tūkstoš deviņpadsmit trīspadsmitajā gadā. 4 Pirmā izrāde Latvijā notika Jaunajā Teātrī Rīgā nākamajā gadā. 5 'Uguns un nakts' bija lugas nosaukums, kas izteica trimdnieka Raiņa ilgošanos pēc savas dzimtenes. 6 Ar laiku tā kļuva par Raiņa vispopulārāko un visbiežāk izrādīto lugu. 7 Lugas pirmā aina(s) darbība) norit maltuvē. 8 Luga ir dzējā izteikts mīlestības stāsts.

Lesson 18

Bet to pašu nevar teikt par mana tēva lauku māju. Mēs ar savu brālī to šodien apmeklējam, un es to redzēju pirmo reizi. Mans vecaistēvs bija pats būvējis māju no priedes dēļiem, un par daudz naudu viņš bija iepircis dažas lauksaimniecības mašīnas un nodibinājis saimniecību. Saimniekošana sāka iet labi, bet tad uznāca/sākās karš un viss beidzās. Pekšņi viņam bija to jāatstāj. Pēc kara tā kļuva par kolhoza daļu un palika sliktā stāvoklī. Bet tagad mēs atradām, ka jaunsaimnieks ir to nopircis ar privatizācijas sertifikātiem un sāk tajā dzīvot. Viņš ir pat atjaunojis blakus esošo pirti. Viņš nopirka māju no mana brāļa, kam to atdeva valsts. Manam brālīm ir paša uzņēmums Rīgā, un viņš negribēja pārcelties šurp.

Es tev redzēju drīz Adelaidē, un tev pastāstīšu vairāk par visu, ko esmu šeit redzējis, un par sava brauciena biznesa pusi.

Ar sirsnīgiem sveicieniem,
Jānis

Lesson 19

Exercise 1

1 Viņš ir atvedis viņus no Latgales. 2 Ģimenei jāizlido uz Austrāliju.
3 Viņam šķiet, ka viņi dzīvo mierīgi. 4 Viņi mēdz braukt pie Gunāra un Aijas uz Rīgu. 5 Dažreiz viņi brauc uz jūru, vai ar riteniem.
6 Jā, viņu dzīve ir diezgan grūta. 7 Jā, šāda dzīve viņiem patīk.
8 Tā atrodas laukos, Madonas rajonā.

Exercise 2

1 Viņi ilgojās pēc savas dzimtenes. 2 Restorāna iekšpusē mēs ieraudzījām lielu alus mucu. 3 Suņu trenēšana esot viegla. 4 Bļodas bija pilnas ūdens. 5 Koku lapas nokrīt rudenī. 6 Pasniedz man to miltu maisu! 7 Viņa nekad nedzer kafiju; viņa dzer tikai tēju. 8 Vai jūs kaunaties par savas ģimenes dzīves veidu? 9 Mūsu draugi dzīvoja ziemelos no pilsetas. 10 Lūdz ārstam atnākt pēc iespējas ātrāk!

Lesson 20

Exercise 1

1 sakrāvājusi. 2 Celasomās, kravāja, uzvalku, kreklus, bikses, skujamo aparātu. 3 bērniem, palika, aizbraukšanas. 4 uzkrāvis, kastē. 5 atnāca lidostā, atvaidšanās. 6 teica, ilgojas, atgriešanās. 7 šķita, uzturējusies. 8 aicinājis, redzēšanos.

Exercise 3

Anna Brigadere, Jānis Jaunsudrabiņš, Apsīšu Jēkabs, Rūdolfs Blaumanis, Jānis Akurāters, Kārlis Skalbe, (Vīlis) Plūdonis, Augusts Saulietis, Edvarts Vīrza, Kārlis Mīlenbahs, Jānis Endzelīns.

English-Latvian glossary

The vocabulary listed below consists of all words needed in the translation exercises. Adjectives are given in their m. singular form. Noun gender is indicated where it differs from the usual pattern. Verbs are marked for conjugation type.

(be) able	varēt (2D), spē (1D)	(be) ashamed	kaunēties (3C)
about	par	ask (enquire)	jautāt (2A), (request)
abroad	ārzemēs, uz ārzemēm		iesaukt (1D)
according to	pēc	Australia	Austrālija
ache	sāpēt (3C)	autumn	rudens (f.)
achieve	sasnēgt (1D)	(be) aware	apzināties (3A)
action	darbība	back (n.)	mugura, (adv.) atpakaļ
Africa	Āfrika	bad	slukts
after	pēc	bag	maiss, soma
against	pret	barrel	muca
airport	lidosta	be	būt
all	viss	beautiful	skaists
(be) allowed	driestēt (3C)	because	jo, tāpēc ka
almost	gandrīz	become	kļūt (1E)
already	jau	beer	alus
also	arī	beg	lūgt (1D)
although	kaut gan, kaut arī	begin	sākt (1A)
always	vienmēr	Belarus	Baltkrievija
and	un	belief	ticība
arm	roka	believe	ticēt (3C)
arrive	atnākt (1A), atbraukt (1D)	between	starp
as	kā	bicycle	(div) ritenis
		big	liels
blouse	blūze	blouse	blūze
bonfire	uguns	bonfire	uguns
border	robeža	border	robeža
bridge	tilts	bridge	tilts
build	celt (1D), būvēt (2D)	build	celt (1D), būvēt (2D)
building	ēka	building	ēka
burn	degt (1D)	burn	degt (1D)
bus	autobuss	bus	autobuss
-station	autoosta	-station	autoosta
business	uzņēmums, bizness	business	uzņēmums, bizness
but	bet	but	bet
buy	(no)pirkt (1B)	buy	(no)pirkt (1B)
by	pie	by	pie
can: see (be) able		can: see (be) able	
Canada	Kanāda	Canada	Kanāda
capital city	galvas pilsēta	capital city	galvas pilsēta
car	mašīna	car	mašīna
care	rūpēties (2D)	care	rūpēties (2D)
carry	nest (1A)	carry	nest (1A)
celebrate	svinēt (3C)	celebrate	svinēt (3C)
certificate	sertifikāts	certificate	sertifikāts
chair	krēsls	chair	krēsls
champion	čempions	champion	čempions
cheese	siers	cheese	siers
chest	krūtis	chest	krūtis
child	bērns	child	bērns
clean	firs	clean	firs
close (adj.)	tuvs	close (adj.)	tuvs
coffee	kafija	coffee	kafija
cold	auksts	cold	auksts
(be) cold	salt (1E)	(be) cold	salt (1E)
come	(at)nākt (1A)	come	(at)nākt (1A)
comfortable	ērts	comfortable	ērts
condition	stāvoklis	condition	stāvoklis
connect	saisīt (3B)	connect	saisīt (3B)
convenience	ērtība	convenience	ērtība
country	valsts (f.), zeme	country	valsts (f.), zeme
(of) course	protams	(of) course	protams
cow	govs (f.)	cow	govs (f.)
cross (over)	pārbraukt (1D)	cross (over)	pārbraukt (1D)
day	diena	day	diena
dear	dārgs, mīļš	dear	dārgs, mīļš
definite	noteikts	definite	noteikts
Denmark	Dānija	Denmark	Dānija
disappear	pazust (1C)	disappear	pazust (1C)
dish	blāķis	dish	blāķis
do	darīt (3B); veikt (1D)	do	darīt (3B); veikt (1D)
doctor	ārstis; dakters	doctor	ārstis; dakters
dog	suns	dog	suns
drink	dzert (1D)	drink	dzert (1D)
driver	šoferis; vadītājs	driver	šoferis; vadītājs
easy	viegls	easy	viegls
eat	ēst (1A)	eat	ēst (1A)
economy	saimniecība	economy	saimniecība
eight	astoņi	eight	astoņi
elsewhere	citur	elsewhere	citur
empty	tukšs	empty	tukšs
end	beigties (1D)	end	beigties (1D)
environment	vide	environment	vide
establish	nodibināt (3A)	establish	nodibināt (3A)
Estonia	Igaunija	Estonia	Igaunija
Europe	Eiropa	Europe	Eiropa
even	pat	even	pat
ever	arvien	ever	arvien
everything	viss	everything	viss
examine	apskatīt (3B)	examine	apskatīt (3B)
exile	trimdnieks	exile	trimdnieks
expensive	dārgs	expensive	dārgs
express	izteikt (1D)	express	izteikt (1D)
eye	acs (f.)	eye	acs (f.)
fall	(no)krist (1C)	fall	(no)krist (1C)
family	ģimene	family	ģimene
farm	lauku mājas; saimniecība	farm	lauku mājas; saimniecība
father	tēvs	father	tēvs
(in) favour	labā	(in) favour	labā
fifth	piektais	fifth	piektais
find	atrast (1C)	find	atrast (1C)
Finn	soms	Finn	soms
fire	uguns	fire	uguns
first	pirmais	first	pirmais

five	pieci	hot	karsis	Lithuania	Lietuva	northern	ziemeļu-
flat (apartment)	dzīvoklis	hour	stunda	live	dzīvot (2B)	Norway	Norvēģija
flour	milti	house	māja	long (time)	ilgs	not	ne
-mill	maltuve	how	kā, (- are you?)	longing	ilgošanās	now	tagad
folk	tauta		kā tev jums	look	(pa)skatīt;	nowadays	mušu dienās
foodstuff	pārtikas		klājas; (much		skatīties (3B);		puslūsten
	produkts	however	etc.) cik		(appear)		bieži
for	par	hurt	tomēr; taču		izskatīties;		vecs
forbid	aizliegt (1D)	I	sāpēt (3C)		(for) meklēt		uz
four	četri	if	es	(a) lot	(2D)	only	tikai
free	brīvs	import	ja	love	daudz	open	atvērt (1D4)
friend	draugs	importance	invest (1A)	luggage	mīlestība	ordinary	parasts
from	no	important	svarīgums	machinery	bagāža	ought	vajadzētu
full	pilns	industrial	svarīgs	make	mašīnas	our	mūsu
garden	dārzs	inside	rūpnieciskis		(pa)gatavot	outside	ārā
get	dabūt (2A);	it	iekšā; iekšpusē		(2B); taisīt	over	pārī
	sāņemt (1A);	journey	tas	manage	(3B)	own	paša; savs
go	nokļūt (1E)	joyful	brauciens;	many	izdoties	pain	sāpes
	iet; (by vehicle)	jump	ceļojums	married	daudz	pancake	pankūka
good	braukt (1D)	kind (n.)	priecīgs	marry	precēts	part	daļa
-bye	labs	lake	lēkt (1D)	midsummer	precēties (3C)	pass	pasniegt (1D)
grandfather	uz redzēšanos!	landlord	veids	milk (v.)	Jāpi	passport	pase
Great Britain	vectēvs	last (adj.,	ezers	minute	slaukt (1D)	pay	maksāt (2A)
greet	Lielbritānija	ultimate)	saimnieks	Miss	minūte	penalty	sods
grow (intr.)	sveicināt (3A)		pēdējais;	money	jaunkundze	people	cilvēki
	(pie)augt (1A);		(previous)	more	nauda	perform	izrādīt (3B)
guest	audzēt (2D)	Latvia	pagājušais; (v.)	morning	vairāk	performance	izrāde
half	viesis	Latvija	ilgt	most	rīts	pine	priede
hand (v.)	puse	Latvian (n.)	Latvija	mother	visvairāk	plank	dēlis
hard (difficult)	pasniegt (1D)		latvietis;	move	māte	play (n.)	luga; (v.)
he	grūts		(language)	much	pārcelties (1D)		spēlēt(ies)
health	viņš	leaf	latviski	name	daudz		(2D)
healthy	veselība	learn	lapa	need (n.)	vārds;	please!	lūdz!
hear	vesel(īg)s	leave (behind)	(ie)mācīties (3B)	neighbour	nosaukums	plenty	(loti) daudz
help	dzirdēt (3C)		atsiāt (1D);	never	vajadzība	poor	nabadzīgs
here	palīdzēt (3C)		(depart)	new	kaimiņš	popular	populārs
	šeit; šejene;		aizbraukt	next	nekad	present (n.)	dāvana
herring	(hither) šurp	leg	(1D); aiziet	night	jauns	privatization	privatizācija
home	silke	letter	kāja	nine	blakus	produce	ražot
homeland	mājās	life	vēstule	no	nakts (f.)	protect	aizsargāt (2A)
	dzimtene	like (be pleasing)	dzīve		deviņi	protection	aizsardzība
			patikt (1C)		nē	provide	nodrošināt

purge	šķīstīties (2C)	sin	grēks	ticket	biljete	United States (of America)	(Amerikas)
quick	ātrs	since	kopš	time (quantity)	laiks; (occasion)	(of America)	Savienotās
quite	visai	sing	dziedāt (3C)	(get) tired	nogurt (1E)	until	Valstis
rain (n.)	lietus; (v.) līt (1E)	sister	māsa	to	uz	verse	fidz
rapid	straujš	six	seši	today	šodien	victory	dzeja
rare	rets	sleep (n.)	miegš; (v.) gulēt (3C)	tomato	tomāts	view	uzvara
really	(pa)ticšām	slow	lēns	tomorrow	rit	village	skats
recently	nesen	small	mazs	too (also)	ari	visit (place)	ciems
red	sarkans	smoke	smēkēt (2D)	tooth	zobs	walk	apmeklēt (2D)
remain	palikt (1B)	snow	sniegs	towards	pret	want	iet, staigāt (2A)
remember	atcerēties (3C)	so	tik; (so that) lai	town	pilsēta	wash	gribēt (3C)
remove	nogērbt (1D)	some	dazi	tradition	tradīcija	water	mazgāt (2A)
restaurant	restorāns	son	dēls	traffic	safiksme	way	ūdens (f.)
restore	atjaunot (2B)	song	dziesma	train (n.)	vilciens; (v.) trenēt (2D)	we	ceļš
return (intr.)	atgriezties (1D)	soon	drīz	travel	braukt (1D)	week	mēs
rich	bagāts	Soviet	Padomju	treat	uzņemt (1A)	well (adv.)	nedēļa
right (side)	labā (puse)	Spain	Spānija	tree	koks	what	labi
river	upe	speak	runāt (2A)	trip	brauciens	when	kas
run	skriet (1C/D)	sport	sports	trolley-bus	trolejbuss	why	kāpēc
Russia	Krievija	stay	palikt (1B)	try	mēģināt (3A)	word	vārds
Russian	krievu	still	tomēr	Tuesday	otrdiena	work (n.)	darbs
sauna	pirs (f.)	(nevertheless)	apstāties (1D)	two	divi	world	pasaule
say	sacīt (3B), teikt (1D)	stop	stāsts	umbrella	lietussargs	write	rakstīt
scene	aina	story	viela	unbeaten	neuzvarēts,	year	rakstnieks
school	skola	suddenly	pēkšņi	uncle	negāzts	yes	gads
sea	jūra	sun	saule	understand	tēvocis,	yesterday	jā
second	otrais	Swede	zvēdš	unexpected	onkulis,	you (sg.)	vakar
see	redzēt (3C); (catch sight of) ieraudzīt (3B)	table	galds	uninvited	krusttēvs	familiar	tu; (pl., polite)
seem	šķīst (1B)	tea	tēja		saprast (1C)	young	jūs
settlement	ciemats	that (prep.)	tas; (conj.) ka		negaidīts	youth	jauns
seven	septiņi	theatre	teātris		neatcēlāts		jaunība
several	daži, vairāki	their	viņu				
she	vīpa	then	tad				
shine	spīdēt (3C)	they	viņi				
shop	veikals	thin	plāns				
shout	kliegt (1D)	think (intend)	(no)domāt (2A)				
side	puse	this	šis				
		three	trīs				
		through	caur				

Latvian-English glossary

Adjectives are given in their masculine form. Nouns' gender is indicated where it deviates from the normal pattern. Verbs are marked for conjugation type. Words are given in the usual Latvian dictionary order: that is, accented consonants are treated as separate letters in alphabetical order, accented vowels are not.

ābele	apple-tree	aizīīt	wrap up (1A)
abi	both	aizvest	take away (1A)
ābols	apple	akmens	stone
absolūns	absolute	alga	wages
acīmredzot	obviously	allaž	always
acs (f.)	eye	alus	beer
adrese	address	ap	round
agrs	early	apakša	bottom, below
aģentūra	agency	apakšējs	lower
ai!	oh!	aparāts	apparatus
aicināt	invite (3A)	apavi	footwear
aizbēgt	flee (2A)	apbūve	building
aizbraukt	leave, depart (1D)	apciemot	visit, call on (2B)
	go away; pass, elapse	apdare	decoration
aiziet	fly away (2B)	apdraudēt	endanger (3C)
aizlidot	fall asleep (1B)	apdzīvot	inhabit (2B)
aizmigt	forget (1E)	apelsīns	orange
aizmirst	remark (3B)	apgabals	region
aizrādīt	protection	apgalvot	assert (2B)
aizsardzība	protect (2A)	apgērbties	get dressed (1D)
aizsargāt	preventative	apinis	hop
aizsargidzēklis	measure	apijēt	realize (1D)
	slip away (3C)	apjoms	volume
aizslidēt		apkalpošana	service
		apkalpot	serve (2B)

apkārne	surroundings	atceļš	way back
apkopt	clean, tidy (1B)	atcerēties	remember (C3)
apkure	heating	atelpa	respite, leisure
apkurināt	heat (3A)	atgādināt	remind, recall (2A)
apķert	clasp, grasp (1D)	atgriezties	return (1D)
aplamība	incorrectness	atiet	depart
aplipt	adhere (1C)	atjaunot	restore (2B)
aplis	circle	atkal	again
apmainīt	exchange (3B)	atkarīgs	dependent
apmeklēt	visit (2D)	atkārtot	repeat (2B)
apmēram	about	atlikt	put off (1B)
apmierināt	satisfy (3A)	atļaut	allow (1D)
applaucēt	scald (2D)	atmiņa	memory
aprecēties	get married (C3)	atmosfēra	atmosphere
aprobežot	restrict (2B)	atnākt	wake up (1E)
aproce	bracelet	atnākt	arrive (1A)
apslīt	warm (3B)	atnākt	bring (1A)
apskatīt	examine (3B)	atpakaļ	back
apskaņības	look around	atpūties	relax (1D)
apsmācēt	disdain (C3)	atrast	find (1C)
apstākļi	circumstance	ātrs	quick
apstāties	stop (1D)	atsevišķs	separate
apstrādāt	process (2A)	atsist	repulse (1A)
aptvert	embrace (1D)	atskriet	come running (1C)
apvelties	roll over (1D)		
apvidus	district	atstāt	leave (1D)
apvienot	unite (2B)	atšķirīgs	different
apzināties	be aware (3A)	atšķirties	differ (1D)
ar	with	atiecība	relation
ārā	outside	atfisiķis	develop (3B)
ārējs	external	atvaļinājums	holiday
arī	also	atvase	sprout
ārsts	doctor	atvērt	open (1D)
ārvalsts (f.)	foreign country, abroad	atveseloties	recover (2B)
arvien	always	atvieglot	relieve, ease (2B)
ārzmēs	abroad	audzēt	cultivate (2D)
asara	tear	auglība	fertility
ass	sharp	augļš	fruit
astopi	eight	auglis	fruit
astopadmit	eighteen	augstiene	height
atbilst	correspond (1E)	augsts	high

augša	top, upper part	biete	beet(root)	cena	price	darbība	action
augt	grow (1A)	biezs	thick, dense	centsties	strive (1D)	darbinieks	worker
augums	stature	bieži	often	centrāls	central	darbāna	workshop
auss (f.)	ear	bikses	trousers	centrs	centre	darbs	work
Austrālija	Australia	bilst	say (1E)	cepeškrāns	oven	dārglieta	jewel
austrumi	east	biļete	ticket	ceplis	kiln	dārgs	dear, expensive
autobuss	bus	birojs	bureau	cerēt	home	darīt	do (3B)
automātisks	automatic	biskaps	bishop	ceturksnis	quarter	darītava	brewery
autoosta	bus station	bistams	dangerous	ceturtdiena	Thursday	dārzeni	vegetables
avīze	newspaper	bizness	business	ciemats	settlement	dārzs	garden
azāids	meal	biakus	beside	ciems	village	dati	data
badis	hunger	bloķēt	block(ade)	iet ciemos	go visiting	daudz	much
bagāts	rich	blūze	blouse	cienīt	respect (3B)	dāvana	present
bagāža	luggage	bloda	dish	ciest	suffer (1D)	dažreiz	sometimes
baidīties	fear (3B)	brālis	brother	ciet	shut, closed	dažāds	various
baidīgs	timid	braucens	journey	cik	hard	dažs	some
balkons	balcony	brankts	travel (1D)	cikoks	how (much)	dažviet	here and there
balti	the Balts	brīdis	moment	cilts (f.)	at what time	deguns	nose
baltmaize	white bread	brīsmas	danger	cilvēks	tribe	dēlis	plank
balts	white	brīst	ford (1C)	cīnīties	person, man	dēls	son
balķis	beam	brīvs	free	cirkis	struggle (3B)	dēl	because of
bārda	beard	brūns	breakfast	ciņāds	circus	derēt	fit, suit (2D)
barot	feed (2B)	brūngans	brown	cits	different	desa	sausage
basketbols	basketball	brūvē	brew	citur	other	desmit	ten
bandīt	enjoy (3B)	bumbā	ball	citrons	elsewhere	deviņi	nine
baznīca	church	burkāns	carrot	cūka	lemon	deviņpadsmit	nineteen
bāzi	push, poke (1D)	burvis	wizard	cukurs	pig	dibens	bottom
bēda	care, worry	būv	be (irreg.)	čempionāts	sugar	diemžēl	unfortunately
bēdāt	grieve (2A)	būvē	essential	čempions	championship	diena	day
bedre	pit	cālis	chicken	četratā	champion	diennakts	twenty-four
beidzot	at last	caur	through	četri	the four of	dienvidi	hours
beigas	end	celt	raise, build (1D)	četrpadsmit	(them)	Dievs	south
beigt	finish (1D)	celties	get up	dabūts	four	diezgan	god
benzīns	petrol	celme	building	dabūt	natural	dileris	enough, quite
bērība	childhood	celasoma	suitcase	dadzis	get (2D)	dilles	dealer
bērnis	child	ceļojums	journey	dailrade	burdock	divāns	dill
bet	but	ceļot	travel (2B)	dakšīpa	handicraft	divdesmit	sofa
bez	without	ceļš	road, way	dalit	fork	divi	twenty
bezgalīgs	endless			daliņas	divide (3B)	divpadsmit	two
bibliotēka	library			dala	be divided	(div)ritenis	twelve
biezpiens	curds				part	dizoties	(bi)cycle
biedrs	comrade						show off (2B)

doma	thought, idea	ekonomisks	economic	garša	taste	ieciēnīt	respect, like,
domāt	think (3A)	elektrība	electricity	garšīgs	delicious		admire (3C)
dot	give (irreg.)	elpot	breathe (2B)	garšot	taste good	iedomāties	imagine (2A)
dodies	set off	eļļa	oil	garums	length	iedzīvotājs	inhabitant
draudi	threat	ērība	comfort,	gatavot	prepare, make (2B)	ieēja	entrance
draugs	friend		convenience		prepare	ieguldīt	invest (3B)
	(draudzene	ērīgs	comfortable	gatavoties	ready	iegūt	obtain (1E)
drēbes	clothes	es	I	gaume	taste	iejusties	get used to, fit into (1C)
driestēt	may, be allowed	ēst	eat (1A)	gāzt	overthrow (1D)	iekārtā	system order,
	soon	ēstgriba	appetite	gids	guide	iekārtojums	arrangement
drīz	safe	etiķis	vinegar	glabāt	keep (2A)	iekopt	cultivate (1D)
drūms	gloomy	ezers	lake	glāze	glass	iekša	inside
drupas	ruins	firma	company	glāze	pretty, handsome	ielēkt	interior
drusku	a little	folija	foil	glāze	smooth	iekšelpas	jump in (1D)
drusku	cornfield	futbols	football	glāze	quite	ielēkt	put in (1B)
druva	door	gadījums	event	glāze	honest	ielikt	learn (3B)
durvis (pl.)	door	gadīt	chance, happen (3B)	glāze	cow	ielikt	gain (2B)
dzelzeļš	railway	gadīt	year	govs (l.)	book	ienācēnis	throw in (1A)
džeramauda	tip	gadīt	century	grāmata	hovel	ienācēnis	enemy
džerens	drink	galīt	wait (3B)	grāmatā	pile	ienācēnis	come in, enter (1A)
džert	drink (1D)	galīt	cock, rooster	grāmatā	ring	ienācēnis	carry in (1A)
džiedāt	sing (3C)	galīt	air	grāmatā	want (3C)	ienācēnis	acquaintance
džiesma	song	galīt	gait, pace,	grāmatā	floor	ienācēnis	buy, purchase (1B)
džilš	deep	galīt	course	grāmatā	ceiling	ienācēnis	tear (1D)
džimis	born	galīt	corridor	grāmatā	influenza	ienācēnis	let in (3A)
džimšana	birth	galīt	course	grāmatā	revolving	ienācēnis	before(hand)
džimt	be born (1E)	galīt	end	grāmatā	basket	ienācēnis	previous
džimtene	homeland	galīt	head	grāmatā	hard, difficult	ienācēnis	appear, turn up (1C)
džimts	native	galīt	capital city	grāmatā	sleep (3C)	ienācēnis	see, catch sight of, notice (3B)
džintars	amber	galīt	chief, main	grāmatā	bed	ienācēnis	arrange (2B)
džirdēt	hear (3C)	galīt	indeed	grāmatā	bedroom	ienācēnis	recommend (3B)
džirdējs	keen, sharp	galīt	both ... and	grāmatā	log-house	ienācēnis	warm up (3B)
džirdējs	die down (1E)	galīt	almost	grāmatā	cucumber	ienācēnis	opinion
džist	drive (1B)	galīt	along	grāmatā	get, obtain (1E)	ienācēnis	impressive
džit	life	galīt	past	grāmatā	hockey	ienācēnis	impression
džīve	flat, apartment	galīt	garage	grāmatā	shove, push (3B)	ienācēnis	
džīvoklis	live (2B)	galīt	spirit	grāmatā	invade (1C)	ienācēnis	
džīvot	meal	galīt	long	grāmatā		ienācēnis	
ēdiens	Europe	galīt		grāmatā		ienācēnis	
Eiropa	passage	galīt		grāmatā		ienācēnis	
eja	building	galīt		grāmatā		ienācēnis	
ēka		galīt		grāmatā		ienācēnis	

iespēja	possibility	isums	invest	export (1A)	kakts	corner
iespējams	possible	it	ja	if	kakis	cat
iestarpināt	interject (3A)		Jā	yes	kalendārs	calendar
ieskelt	split (1D)	itin	Jāpi	St John's/	kalns	mountain, hill
iet	go (irreg.)	izausme		Midsummer	kalpone	maid-servant
ieteikt	advise (1D)	izcept	jau	Day	kamēr	while; until
ietekmēt	influence (2D)	izdoties	jauda	already	kamera	camera
ietilpt	be included (1E)		jauks	power	kanalizācija	sewage
ietriekt	plunge in (1D)	izgulēties	jaukt	pretty	kāpēc	why
ievāriņums	jam	iziet	jauneklis	mix (1D)	kāposti	cabbage
ievērojams	remarkable,	izirēt		youth, young	kareivis	soldier
	considerable	izjukt	jaunība	man	karote	spoon
ievērot	observe (2B)	izjust	jaunkundze	youth	karsts	hot
ievēst	import (1A)	izkrist	jauns	Miss	kārša	war
ievietot	put, place (2B)	izlaist	jebkurš	young; new	kārta	round
iežogojums	enclosure, fence	izlase	jel	any	karte	map
Igaunija	Estonia	izlīdzināt	jo	do! (emphatic)	kārība	procedure
igauņi	Estonian		joma	because	kartupelis	potato
ikdiens	week-day	izmantot	joprojām	sphere, field	kas	who; what;
ikdienišķs	everyday	izmērīt	juniors	still	which	hook
ikri	caviar	iznākt	jūra	junior	kāsis	kettle, boiler
ikviens	each and every		jūs	sea	kats	every, each
ilgoties	long for, yearn	izpelnēt	just	seaside	kauja	battle
ilgs	long (time)	izpemt	justies	you (polite, pl.)	kaut	although; some
ilgt	last, continue	izolēt	jūsu	feel (1C)	kilograms	kilogram
	(1E)	izprast	ka	feel, sense	klasikis	classic
interesants	interesting	izskafities	kā	your (polite, pl.)	klāt	present
interese	interest	izsole	kādreiz	that	klāties	fare, do, be (1D)
interesēt	interest	izšķirt	kāds	how; as	klausīties	listen (3B)
	(2D)	izšķīrēt		once	kleitā	dress
intervija	interview	izteikt		what kind of;	kleķis	mud
inženieris	engineer	iztikt	kafējnīca	someone;	klepot	cough
īpašnieks	owner	izvēlēties	kafija	some	klepots	barn
īpašs	special	izvēlēties	kaimiņš	café	klēts (f.)	lame
īre	rent	izvēlēties	kaitēt	coffee	klēts	client
īrēt	rent (2D)	izvēlēties	kāja	neighbour	klēts	climatic
īrnieks	tenant	izvēlēties	kaklarota	injure, harm	klēts	club
īslaicīgs	brief	izvēlēties	kaklasaite	(3C)	klusība	secrecy
īss	short	izvēlēties	kakls	leg, foot	klusība	mishap, failure
istaba	room	izvēlēties		necklace	klusība	become
ists	genuine, real	izvēlēties		tie	klusība	tree; wood

kolēģis	colleague	ķiploks	garlic	lēnām	slowly	līdzin!	please!; here you are!
komanda	team	labdien!	hello! good day!	lēns	slow	lūgt	ask, beg (1D)
komercdarbība	commercial activity	labprāt	willingly	lēpns	proud	lapata	rag, cloth
kontrolē	control, checking	labs	good	libietis	Livonian	lāzt	break (1E)
kooperatīvs	co-operative	labvakar	good evening!	licis	bay, gulf	laudis	people
kopā	together	labvēlīgs	favourable	līderis	leader	launs	evil, bad
kopējs	common	lācis	bear	lidojums	flight	laut	let, allow (1D)
kopt	cultivate, nurse (1B)	lai	may	lidz	airport	loti	very
kopums	totality	laidars	stockyard	līdzens	until; with	micība	teaching
koris	choir	laikam	probably	līdzi	level, even	mačs	match
krāsns (f.)	stove	laikraksts	newspaper	līdzīgs	with	magone	poppy
krasts	coast, shore	laiks	time; weather	līdzsvars	similar	magistrāle	main road
kravāt	pack (2A)	laime	happiness	līdzvērtīgs	balance	maigs	gentle, soft
krāvums	pile	lainīgs	happy	liekties	equivalent	mainīt	change (tr.) (3B)
kreisais	left (side)	laipns	kind	lielākoties	bend (1D)	mainīties	change (intr.)
krējums	cream (putu)	laist	let (1D)	lielisks	mostly	maisjums	mixture
		laiva	boat	liels	magnificent	maiss	bag
		lampa	lamp	liesma	big, great	maize	bread
		lapa	leaf	lieta	flame	maizīte	bun
		lappuse	page	lietot	thing	māja	house
		lapša	fox	lietus	use (2B)	mājoklis	dwelling
		lāpstīņa	ladle	lietusmētēlis	rain	mājup	home(ward)
kreklis	shirt	lasīt	read; gather (3B)	lietussargs	raincoat	mākonis	cloud
krelles	beads	lats	lats (unit of Latvian currency)	liga	league	mākopains	cloudy
krēsls	chair			ligava	bride	maksa	pay
krietns	thorough, considerable			līgavainis	bridegroom	maksāt	pay, cost (2A)
krūms	bush, shrub	latvietis	Latvian	līgo	Līgo (song sung at mid-summer)	maksimums	maximum
krustmāte	aunt	Latvija	Latvia		joyous	māksla	art; skill
krusttēvs	uncle	latviski	in Latvian		put, lay (1B)	mala	edge; region
krūts (f.)	breast, chest	lauki	countryside		seem, appear	māls	clay
kults	cult	lauks	field	likums	level	maltuve	flour-mill
kumelš	foal	lauksaimniecība	agriculture	likties	line	malums	grinding, milling
kungs	gentleman, Mr	laukums	(sports) field, square	līmenis	precipitate, fall (1E)	mančs	mine
kupena	snow-drift		laurels	līnija	member	mans	my
kur	where		ice	līt	flexible, supple	mantot	inherit (2B)
kuriene	where		lesson	loceklis	logs	marinēt	pickle (2D)
kurpe	shoe		jump (1D)	lokāms/lokans	logs	maršruts	route
kursēt	run, ply (2D)		doll		loma	masa	mass
kurš	who, which		decide (1D)			mašīna	sister
kurtuve	furnace		decision			mašīna	car; machine
ķieģelis	brick					māte	mother
ķilava	sprat						

mats	hair	minūte	nelabs	bad	nomest	throw down,
maz	little	minūte	neliks	small	nomest	drop (1A)
mazgāt	wash (2A)	modērs	nemaz	not at all	nomest	camp
mazgātava	laundry	modērs	nepabeigts	unfinished	nomest	die (1E)
mazliet	a little	modērs	nereti	fairly often	nomest	peel (2B)
mazs	little, small	modērs	nest	carry (1A)	nomest	take off (1A)
mazsvarīgs	unimportant	modērs	nefirs	dirty	nomest	serious
mēbelēt	furnish (2D)	mūris	neveikls	awkward,	nomest	buy (1B)
medus	honey	mūris	neveikls	clumsy	nomest	proceed (3C)
mēgt	be in the habit	mūris	neveikls	nobody	nomest	normal
meita	of (1D)	mūris	neveikls	not	nomest	examine (3B)
meitene	daughter	mūris	neveikls	who knows	nomest	mystery, secret
meklēt	girl	mūris	neveikls	reed	nomest	crush, press
	seek, search	mūris	neveikls	trifle	nomest	(1D)
	(2D)	mūris	neveikls	scornful	nomest	fling off (1D)
melns	black	mūris	neveikls	itch (3C)	nomest	determine (1D)
mēnesis	month; moon	mūris	neveikls	pine away (1E)	nomest	definite
	(poet.)	mūris	neveikls	from	nomest	regulation
mēness	moon	mūris	neveikls	end (1D)	nomest	happen (1C)
mērcē	sauce	mūris	neveikls	employ (3A)	nomest	event
mērens	moderate	mūris	neveikls	be engaged in	nomest	clean (3B)
mērķis	goal, target	mūris	neveikls	(2B)	nomest	region, district
mērs	measure, extent	mūris	neveikls	establish (3A)	nomest	wish (2D)
mēs	we	mūris	neveikls	intend (2A)	nomest	put, place (2B)
mēsli	manure	mūris	neveikls	deliver (irreg.)	nomest	branch, industry
metāls	metal	mūris	neveikls	whittle (1D)	nomest	mean (2D)
mētēlis	coat	mūris	neveikls	provide (3A)	nomest	well, now
metiens	throw	mūris	neveikls	arrange (2D)	nomest	number
metrs	metre	mūris	neveikls	supply (2A)	nomest	take (1A)
mezģis	knot	mūris	neveikls	taste (2B)	nomest	official
mēžs	forest	mūris	neveikls	get tired (1E)	nomest	waitress
miegš	sleep	mūris	neveikls	feel ashamed	nomest	waiter
mierīgs	peaceful	mūris	neveikls	(3C)	nomest	berry
mieži	barley	mūris	neveikls	get to, arrive	nomest	pick berries
mīksts	soft	mūris	neveikls	(1E)	nomest	October
mīlestība	love	mūris	neveikls	shade, tint	nomest	egg
mīlēt	love (3C)	mūris	neveikls	decide (1D)	nomest	operator
mīlīti	flour	mūris	neveikls	deny (1D)	nomest	optimist
mīlīgs	huge	mūris	neveikls	put aside (1B)	nomest	port, harbour
mīļš	dear, beloved	mūris	neveikls	warehouse	nomest	Tuesday
minēt	mention (3C)	mūris	neveikls	purpose	nomest	other
minimums	minimum	mūris	neveikls	soak (2D)	nomest	second

ozols	oak	pārāk	too	pieaugt	increase, grow (1A)
pa	along, on, by	parasts	usual	pieaugšais	adult
paauģstināt	increase (3A)	paraugs	specimen, pattern	piebraukt	drive up (1D)
pacelt	raise, lift (1D)	paraža	custom	pieci	five
paceltot	go travelling (2B)	pārcelties	move (1D)	piecirst	slam (1B)
paceplis	kiln	pārdot	sell (irreg.)	piecpadmit	fifteen
paciest	stand, tolerate (1D)	pārdzīvot	survive	piecialities	take part (3B)
paciets	hardish	pārdzēt	foresee (3C)	pieclavāt	offer (2A)
pacukstēt	whisper (3C)	pāreizs	right, correct	pieclavāt	belong (3C)
padarīt	do (3B)	pārējais	the rest	pieclurkne	sleeve
padomdevējs	adviser	pāris	over, across	pieclurkne	get drunk (1D)
padome	council; Soviet	parīt	pair	pieclurkne	be born (1E)
padoms	(piece of) advice	parkets	the day after	pieclurkne	adventure
padot	pass, hand (irreg.)	parks	tomorrow	pieclurkne	deliver, supply (2A)
pagājušais	last	pārķert	parquet (floor)	pieclurkne	smooth (1D)
pagāns	pagan	pārķert	park	pieclurkne	night-watch
pagasts	small rural district	pārķert	intercept (1D)	pieclurkne	littoral, seaboard
pagastināties		pārķert	make sure (3A)	pieclurkne	agree (1C)
pagastināt		pārķert	pour (1A)	pieclurkne	pantry
pagastināt	service	pārķert	change (3B)	pieclurkne	add (1B)
pagastināt	hang up (1D)	pārķert	reproach	pieclurkne	example
pagastināt	subordinate	pārķert	broadcast (3B)	pieclurkne	approach, arrive (1A)
pagastināt	thank you	pārķert	furious	pieclurkne	duty
pagastināt	help (3C)	pārķert	surprise (1D)	pieclurkne	milk
pagastināt	help, assistance	pārķert	food	pieclurkne	reception
pagastināt	increase (3A)	pārķert	have a talk (2A)	pieclurkne	receive (1A)
pagastināt	assistant	pārķert	know, have	pieclurkne	demonstrate (3B)
pagastināt	remain (1B)	pārķert	command of (3A)	pieclurkne	forehead
pagastināt	teach (3B)	pārķert	fairy-tale	pieclurkne	experience
pagastināt	manage (3B)	pārķert	world	pieclurkne	pollute (3B)
pagastināt	foundation, basis	pārķert	laugh, chuckle (1A)	pieclurkne	serve
pagastināt	achievement	pārķert	serve (1B)	pieclurkne	suffice (1C)
pagastināt	pancake	pārķert	have time, manage (1D)	pieclurkne	swelling
pagastināt	fraying-pan	pārķert	paste	pieclurkne	stop
pagastināt	fern	pārķert	pipe (2D)	pieclurkne	stop, halt (3C)
pagastināt	pretty large	pārķert	tell (3B)	pieclurkne	attract (1B)
pagastināt	about, for	pārķert	exist, last (3C)	pieclurkne	picnic
pagastināt	phenomenon	pārķert		pieclurkne	fill (3B)
pagastināt	show (3B)	pārķert		pieclurkne	
pagastināt	habit	pārķert		pieclurkne	

pilnīgs	complete	publicēt	realizēt	rūpniecība	works, factory
pilns	full	pudele	reāls	rūpniecība	industry
pils (f.)	castle, palace	puisis	recepte	rūpnieciskais	industrial
pilsēta	town	puķe	redakcija	sabiedrīks	public
pipari	pepper	pūlis	redzēt	sacepums	pudding, baked
pirāgs, pīrādziņš	pie, pasty	pulks	reiss	food	food
pircejs	buyer	pulksten	reiz	saciksties	contest
pirksts	finger	pulkstenis	reize	sacīt	say (3B)
pirkt	buy (1B)	punkts	reklāma	sadalīt	divide (3B)
pirmais	first	purvs	rājināt	sagaidīt	meet, welcome
pirms	before	pusdiēna	rēķins		(3B)
pirts (f.)	sauna, bath-house	pusdienot	remontēt	sagatavoties	prepare (2B)
	house	puse	remonts	saglabāties	remain (2A)
plāns	thin	puslaiks	resurs	sagriezt	cut (1D)
plašs	wide, broad	pusotra	restaurēt	saine	household
plafība	space, area	pusstunda	restes	saimniecība	economy; farm
plaukts	shelf	pūst	restorāns	saimnieks	landlord, farmer
plaušas	lungs	radinieks	rets	saisīt	connect (3B)
plecs	shoulder	rādīt	rezerve	sakarība	connection
plīts	stove	rādītājs	rezultāts	sakarsēt	heat (2D)
plaut	cut, mow (1D)	ragana	rietumi	saklausīt	hear, catch (3B)
prasīt	ask, require (3B)	rags	rikle	sakne	root
prast	know (how, language)		rikofies	sakrāt	pack up (2A)
	(1C)	raidījums	rinda	sākt, sākties	begin (1A)
prāvs	considerable	raizēties	riņķis	sakta	brooch
prece	article	rajons	risi	salāts	salad
precēt	marry (3C)	rakstāmmašīna	risināt	saldējums	ice-cream
precīzs	exact	rakstīt	risināties	salds	sweet
pret	against, opposite	rakstnieks	riskēt	saldzināt	compare (3A)
prefi	opposite	raksturot	rit	saliekt	bend (1D)
prefinieks	opponent	rakt	ritenis	sāls	salt
priečāties	rejoice (2A)	rasa	ritēt	sāls	freeze (1E)
priekša	front	rasties	rīve	samaksa	payment
priekšnams	anteroom		robeža	samazināt	decrease (3A)
problēma	problem	rafi	roka	samērā	comparatively
produkts	product	raudāt	rudzi	samezgloties	get tangled (2B)
prognose	forecast	raudāt	runāt	sanest	carry in (1A)
prom	away	raust	rupēties	sāns	side
prombūtne	absence	ražot	rūpīgs	sapemt	receive (1A)
protams	of course	ražotājs	rupjmaize	sāpēt	hurt (3C)
proza	prose	ražotne	rupjs	sāpīgs	painful

saprast	understand (1C)	senlatvieši sens	ancient Latvians ancient	skumjš	sad	stallis	stable
saraksts	list	sējot	gather mush-	skurstenis	chimney	starp	between, among
sarežģis	complicated	sejot	rooms (2B)	skūt	shave (1D)	starpniecība	mediation
sarīvēt	grate (2D)	septembris	September	slāids	slender, slim	stāties	stand, start (1D)
sarkans	red	septiņi	seven	slānis	layer	stāvēt	stand (3C)
saruna	conversation	septiņpadsmit	seventeen	slaukt	milk (1D)	stāvoklis	condition
sarunāties	converse (2A)	sērija	series	slēgt	close (1D)	stāvs	storey, floor
sasist	knock together (1A)	sestdiena	Saturday	slavens	famous	stāvētieta	standing-place
saslimt	fall ill (1E)	seši	six	sliede	rail	steiga	hurry
sastādīt	compose,	sešpadsmit	sixteen	sliefenis	hut	stingrs	strict, severe
sastāvēt	compile (3B)	sēta	fence	slikts	bad	stiprs	strong
satiksme	consist (3C)	sev	for/to oneself	slimnieks	patient	strādāt	work (2A)
satikties	traffic	sevišķs	particular	slimot	be ill	straujš	rapid
satraukt	meet (1C)	sezona	season	slims	sick	students	student
saukāt	excite (1D)	siena	wall	slips	sloping	studēt	study
	call, name	siers	cheese	sloksne	strip	studijas	studies
	(3A)	sieva	wife	sludinājums	announcement	stunda	hour
saukt	call (1D)	sieviete	woman	smags	heavy	subsīdēt	subsidize (2D)
saulains	sunny	silts	warm	smalks	fine	suka	brush
saule	sun	silumnica	hothouse	smaržot	smell (2B)	sula	juice
saulgrieži	solstice	silte	(salted) herring	smēķēt	smoke (2D)	summa	sum
saullēkts	sunrise	simt	hundred	smiet(ies)	laugh (1A)	suns	dog
savādība	odddity	sipols	onion	smilt(i)s	sand	suvēnirs	souvenir
savākties	gather oneself (1D)	sirsnijs	hearty, sincere	sniegts	snow	svaigs	fresh
		sist	strike, hit (1A)	sniegt	offer, hand (1D)	svainis	brother-in-law
	grow sickly	skabarga	splinter	sniegums	performance	svarīgs	important
savdabīgs	(1E)	skābs	sour	sods	punishment	svārki	coat; skirt
savest	original, peculiar bring together (1A)	skaidroties	clear up (2B)	soļi	promise (3B)	svars	weight
		skaidrs	clear	soma	bag	sveicināt	greet (3A)
	detached house	skaidrs	beautiful	soms	Finn	sveik!i	hello!i
savrupmāja	one's own	skaitis	beautiful	somugri	Finno-Ugrians	sveiki!	goodbye!
savs	conclude (3A)	skanēt	number	spējīgs	powerful	svēšs	foreign
secināt	cover (1D)	skapot	sound (3C)	spējīgs	able	svētdiena	Sunday
seja	face	skapis	tune (2B)	spēle	bacon	svētki	holiday, festival
sejas	consequence	skafīt	cupboard	spēlēt	play, game	sviedri	sweat
sekot	follow (2B)	skafīt	look (3B)	spīdēt	play (2D)	sviestmaize	bread-and-butter,
sekunde	second	skafīt	look at	spīdēt	shine (3C)	sandwich	sandwich
sen	long ago	skafīt	view	spiest	press, force (1D)	sviests	butter
sēne	mushroom	skats	look at	spodrs	shiny	svinēt	celebrate
		skola	school	sports	sport	šāds	such
		skriet	run (1C)	stacija	station	šalkas	rustle
				staigāt	walk (2A)	šaus	narrow

šausmīgs	awful	te	here	trīnda	exile	uzlikt	put on (1B)
šeit	here	teikt	tell, say (1D)	trīndinīeks	deportee	uzmanīgs	attentive
šējiene	here	tēja	tea	trīs	three	uzņēmējs	businessman
šis	this	telefons	telephone	trīspadsmit	noise	uzņēmums	business
šķirne	sort, variety	televīzija	television	troksnis	trolley-bus	uzrādīt	enterprise
šķirt	divide, part	telpa	room, premise, space	trolejbuss	be lacking, missing (1E)	uzreiz	present, show (3B)
šķīst	seem	teļš	calf	trūkt	thousand	uzreiz	at once
šķivis	plate	temperatūra	temperature	trūkums	shortage	uzsākt	begin (1A)
šķabis	vodka	teniss	tennis	tūkstoš	thousand	uzturēt	stay (3C)
šobaldien	this very day	tepat	right here	tukšs	empty	uzvalks	suit
šobrid	at this moment	teritorija	territory	tūlīt	immediately	uzvarēt	conquer, win (3C)
šodien	today	termometrs	thermometer	tur	there	uzzināt	find out (3A)
šokolāde	chocolate	tērps	clothes	turēt	hold (3C)	uzziņa	information
šonakt	tonight	tētiņš	dad(dy)	tūriene	there	vācu	German
šorīt	this morning	tēvocis	uncle	tūrisms	tourism	vadība	leadership, management
šoseja	highway	tēvs	father	tūrists	tourist	vadīt	lead (3B)
štats	state	ticējums	superstition	turklāt	moreover	vadīt	leader
šurp	here, hither	ticēt	believe (3C)	turp	there, thither	vadonis	or; question-word
tā	thus, so	tiešām	really	turpināt	continue (3A)	vai	check
tā kā	since	tiesā	direct	turpmāk	in future	vaigs	garland, crown
taču	however	tiesības	rights	tuvāk	closer	vainags	more
tad	then	tik	so	tuvoties	approach (2B)	vairāk	several
tādēļ	therefore	tikai	only	tuvu	near	vairāki	(no) longer/more
tāds	such	tikko	just now	tuvums	closeness	vairs	need (3C)
tagad	now	tikpat	just as much	ūdens (f.)	water	vajadzēt	yesterday
taisīt	make (3B)	tikt	arrive, get, be (1C)	uguns (f.)	fire	vakar	evening
taisns	straight; right	tilts	bridge	uguns	bonfire	vakars	government
tālāk	further	tipisks	typical	un	and	valdība	humid, moist
tālrunis	telephone	tips	type	universitāte	university	valks	wear (2A)
tāls	distant	tirdzniecība	trade	upe	river	valkāts	language
tālu	far	tirgus	market	uz	on, to	valoda	state, country
tanks	tank	firs	pure	uzaugt	grow up (1A)	valsts (f.)	perhaps
tapa	plug	tomāts	tomato	uzbērt	strew (1D)	varbūt	dictionary
tāpat	likewise	tomēr	still, yet	uzbrukt	attack (1C)	vārdnīca	word; name
tapt	become (1C)	torēz	then, at that time	uzbrukums	task	vārds	mighty, power
tase	cup	torte	tart, cake	uzdevums	amusement	varens	be able
tātd	so, then	tradīcija	tradition	uzjautrinājums	sprinkle (3B)	varēt	version
taure	trumpet, horn	transporta	transport	uzkaisīt	listen to (3B)	variant	gate; goal
tauta	people, folk	transports	transport	uzklaust	snack	vārti	wicket-gate
tavs	your (sg., familiar)	tranzīts	transit	uzkoda	accumulate (1D)	vārtiņi	
		trauks	vessel	uzkrāt			

vasara	summer	vienīgs	only, sole	zaudēt	lose (2D)	zirgs	horse
vasarnīca	summer-house	vienkāršs	simple	zeķe	stocking, sock	zivs (f.)	fish
vecāki	parents	vienlaicīgs	simultaneous	zelts	gold	zobs	tooth
vecāmate	grandmother	vienmēr	always	zeme	earth, land	zooloģisks	zoological
vecs	old	vienošāns	agreement	zemene	strawberry	zooveikals	pet-shop
vecitēvs	grandfather	vienpadsmit	eleven	zemniecība	peasantry	zupa	soup
veicināt	promote (3A)	vienreizējs	unique	zemnieks	peasant	zvanīt	ring (3B)
veids	form, kind	vienstāvs	one; alone	zēns	boy	zvejnieks	fisherman
veikals	shop	vientuļš	single, unmarried	ziēds	flower, blossom	zvēdēds	Swede
veikt	do, perform	viesis	guest	ziema	winter	žēlīgs	mournful
vējš	(1D)	viesmīlis	waiter	Ziemassvētki	Christmas	žigls	nimble, agile
vēl	wind	viesnīca	hotel	ziemeļi	north	žogs	fence, enclosure
vēlāk	still	vieta	place	zināt	know (3A)	žurnāls	journal,
vēlēt	later	vietējs	local	ziņa	news		magazine
velns	wish (3C)	vietumis	in places				
vēls	devil	vilkciens	train				
vēlu	late	vilkts	pull (1B)				
veja	late	vīns	wine				
(ņem) vēra	linen, washing	vīpa	she; his				
	(take) into	vīpi (m.)	they				
	account/	vīpas (f.)	they; her				
	consideration	vīpš	he				
veranda	verandah	vīrietis	man				
verdošs	boiling	vīrs	husband				
vērot	observe (2B)	vīrs	surface				
vērsties	turn, appeal (1D)	vīrsū	on, above				
vērt	open/close	vīrtuve	kitchen				
	(1D)	vīrties	move, advance				
vērtība	value	vīrties	(3B)				
vērtīgs	valuable	visāds	all kinds				
vērts	worth	visai	quite, rather				
veselība	health	visbeidzot	lastly				
vest	lead (1A)	visi	everybody				
vēstule	letter	vismaz	at least				
vēsture	history	vispār	generally, at				
vide	environment	vispār	all				
vidējs	average, middle	vispirms	first of all				
vidū	in the middle	viss	all, everything				
viegls	light, easy	vista	hen				
viela	substance	visvairāk	most of all				
vien	only, ever	zāķis	hare				
vienība	unit	zāle	hall; grass				

Glossary of grammatical terms

This list of grammatical terms covers the basic terminology used in the language points in this book. The most basic elements of language are:

Sentence: a complete utterance containing a finite verb. Sentences may be *statements*, *questions* or *exclamations*, and the punctuation mark at the end of the sentence – full stop, question-mark or exclamation-mark – will indicate which kind of sentence it is.

Clause: A subsection of a sentence, containing a verb. Clauses may be either *main clauses* or *subordinate clauses*. A main clause is one which can stand alone as a complete utterance; a subordinate clause adds information to the main clause and refers back to or depends on it. Subordinate clauses are very often introduced by *conjunctions* of various kinds, such as 'when', 'if', 'that', 'and', 'or'. Example:

I was thinking that you might be late. (Main clause 'I was thinking'; subordinate clause introduced by *that*.)

Unlike English, Latvian always has a comma to separate a main clause from a subordinate one: for example, the sentence above would be: **Es domāju, ka tu varētu aizkavēties.**

Phrase: any group of words linked together by meaning and function in the sentence. 'Train' is a noun, but 'the freight train' is a noun phrase, for example.

Noun: a word that names a thing or living being: for example 'train', 'baby', 'pillow', 'idea'.

Adjective: a word that describes the quality of a thing: for example, 'red', 'old', 'fast'.

Adverb: a word that qualifies an adjective or a verb, such as 'quickly', 'now', 'lately', 'there'.

Pronoun: a word which stands in place of a noun, such as 'he', 'you', 'it'.

Verb: a word which describes an action, process or state, such as 'go', 'exist', 'travel'.

Preposition: a word which comes before a noun to express a relationship in time or space, such as 'before', 'on', 'with'.

Postposition: a word or particle placed after the word it modifies, such as '-ward' in 'homeward'.

Conjunction: A word which joins words, phrases or clauses or otherwise establishes a relationship between these elements, such as 'and', 'or', 'when', 'because'.

Now let us look at the terms used in this book to refer more specifically to Latvian grammar. We will look at the terms under the broad headings of *Nouns*, *Pronouns*, *Verbs* and *Adjectives*.

Nouns

Nouns in Latvian have two *numbers*: singular and plural. They have two *genders*: masculine and feminine. They are also *declined* (modified) according to *case* by the addition of different suffixes to the stem. Below is a list of the Latvian cases with rough English equivalents of their meanings:

Nominative: the basic uninflected form, the subject of the sentence, the performer of the action of the verb.

Accusative: the object of the action of the verb.

Genitive: indicates possession or having, equivalent to 'of' or the possessive 's in English.

Locative: 'in, at, on' a place or time.

Dative: 'to, for'; the dative is used with all prepositions in the plural.

It is used to indicate the possessor in phrases meaning 'to have'. Latvian grammarians also list the instrumental case ('by means of'), though usually this consists of the preposition *ar* with the noun in the accusative (singular) or dative (plural).

Pronouns

These may be one of the following:

personal ('you, he, him');

demonstrative ('this, that');

interrogative ('which?' 'who?');

relative ('which', 'that').

All are declined in the same way as nouns.

Verbs

Verbs are *conjugated* (modified) according to *voice*, *person*, *tense*, *mood* and what we might call 'valency' (whether they are positive or negative).

Voice can be either *active* (performing an action) or *passive* (being acted upon).

Person: there are three persons – first ('I', 'we'), second ('you') and third ('he/she/it', 'they'). Each person can have either singular or plural *number*.

Tense in Latvian can be one of the following:

present: describing an action current at the time of the utterance;
future: describing what is anticipated or yet to occur;
past (or *imperfect*): describing something that took place prior to the time of the utterance;
perfect: describing something that 'has taken place';
pluperfect: describing something that 'had taken place'.

Mood: the mood of a verb can be

indicative: describing action that is real;
subjunctive/conditional: describing action that is putative or projected – where we use 'would/should/could' in English, and in clauses starting with 'if';
imperative: commanding or ordering an action;
relative or *reported*: describing an action or state which is said to be the case but which the speaker does not necessarily believe;
debitive: the mood of obligation ('must' in English).

All the verb forms described above are what we call *finite*: that is, they are limited in their function by the clause in which they are used. There are also *non-finite* forms, which are independent of any function in the clause, and they are:

infinitive: the basic dictionary form of the verb, the 'to' form in English;

gerund: the verb used as a noun, such as 'sitting', 'being', 'living' in English.

participles: verbs used in the function of adjectives, to qualify nouns. They are of four kinds: *present active* (such as 'seeing'); *present passive* (such as 'visible, to be seen'); *past active* ('having seen'); *past passive* ('having been seen'). Participles are used more frequently in Latvian than English.

Adjectives

In Latvian, adjectives are declined like nouns for number and case; they are said to *agree* with the nouns they qualify. Latvian adjectives may be either *definite* ('the black cat') or *indefinite* ('a black cat').

Adjectives are also declined for *degree*. There are three degrees: *positive* (such as 'much'); *comparative* (such as 'more'); *superlative* (such as 'most').

Those *adverbs* that are formed from adjectives are also declined according to degree.

Index of language points

This list contains both grammatical terms and points about expression. The numbers refer to the lessons in which they are covered.

- abstract nouns 7
- accusative case 1, 2
- addressing people 10
- adjectival participle -oш- 10
- adjectives 1, 14
- adverbs 1, 13
- agent nouns 7, 9
- 'as ... as possible' 19
- asking questions 1
- asking the way 3, 5
- basic verb forms 1
- 'becoming' verbs 12
- being and having 1
- the body 10
- broadcasting 17
- business terms 11
- buying tickets 8
- clothes 20
- colours 20
- commands 2
- comparisons 4, 13
- compound nouns 4
- conditional verbs 4
- conjunctions 15
- cooking 14
- countries and nationalities 12
- culture 16
- dative case 1, 2
- days of the week 6
- definiteness 2
- demonstrative adjectives 2
- diminutives 4, 10
- directions 3, 5
- double negation 5
- eating out 11
- expressing requests: 'please' and 'thank you' 1
- feminine gender 1, 3
- festivals 7, 16
- food 3, 11, 14
- future tense 4, 8, 10
- gender 1, 13
- genitive case 1, 2, 19
- geography 5
- gerunds 20
- going to a restaurant 11
- greetings 1
- group numbers 9
- 'have' 2
- health 10
- 'here' and 'there' 3, 20
- the home 9
- humour 10
- 'if' 4
- impersonal verbs 5, 17
- indirect statements 15
- infinite form of the verb 6
- inhabitants of places 11
- 'in order to' 5
- instrumental case 1
- 'is not' 5
- lai (particle) 5
- language 20
- 'let's' 1
- letter т 16
- letter-writing 15, 18
- locative case 1
- maps 5
- masculine gender 1, 4
- media 17
- money 8
- months and dates 6
- music 16
- 'must' 5
- 'need' 15
- negating participles 12
- negative verbs 2, 8
- news (particle) 9
- newspapers 17
- noun cases 1
- numbers 2, 3, 9, 16
- omission of the subject 5, 7, 15
- 'ought' 15
- pa- prefix 14
- participles 7, 8, 10, 13, 15
- passive voice 11
- past tense 4
- perfect tense 2
- personal pronouns 1
- place-names 8
- 'plenty of' 18
- plural nouns 1, 3
- plural pronouns 16
- possession 11
- possibility 19
- prefixes 7, 14
- prepositions 2, 3, 5, 15
- present continuous tense 9
- present participle 13, 18
- proverbs 13
- public transport 8
- reflexive verbs 5, 7, 8, 10, 20
- relative mood 15
- reported speech 15
- restaurant food 11
- road travel 8
- shops and shopping 4
- 'should' 4
- singular and plural nouns 1
- 'someone', 'something' 3
- sound changes 3
- sport 12
- subjectless clauses 7
- subjunctive verbs 4
- superlative of adjective 12
- telling the time 3
- '(the fact) that' 4, 9
- 'there is not' 4
- 'this', 'that' 2
- time expressions 5, 6
- timetables 8
- the town 2
- travel 8, 15
- using numbers 9
- verb tenses 9
- vocative case 1
- the weather 6
- word formation 11
- word order 4
- 'would' 4
- writing addresses 15
- writing to a friend 15, 18